



GuardPLC[™] Controller Systems

Bulletin 1753, 1754, 1755

User Manual

Rockwell Automation

Important User Information

Solid state equipment has operational characteristics differing from those of electromechanical equipment. *Safety Guidelines for the Application, Installation and Maintenance of Solid State Controls* (Publication SGI-1.1 available from your local Rockwell Automation sales office or online at http://www.ab.com/manuals/gi) describes some important differences between solid state equipment and hard-wired electromechanical devices. Because of this difference, and also because of the wide variety of uses for solid state equipment, all persons responsible for applying this equipment must satisfy themselves that each intended application of this equipment is acceptable.

In no event will Rockwell Automation, Inc. be responsible or liable for indirect or consequential damages resulting from the use or application of this equipment.

The examples and diagrams in this manual are included solely for illustrative purposes. Because of the many variables and requirements associated with any particular installation, Rockwell Automation, Inc. cannot assume responsibility or liability for actual use based on the examples and diagrams.

No patent liability is assumed by Rockwell Automation, Inc. with respect to use of information, circuits, equipment, or software described in this manual.

Reproduction of the contents of this manual, in whole or in part, without written permission of Rockwell Automation, Inc. is prohibited.

Throughout this manual we use notes to make you aware of safety considerations.

	Identifies information about practices or circumstances that can cause an explosion in a hazardous environment, which may lead to personal injury or death, property damage, or economic loss.
IMPORTANT	Identifies information that is critical for successful application and understanding of the product.
ATTENTION	Identifies information about practices or circumstances that can lead to personal injury or death, property
	damage, or economic loss. Attentions help you:
<u> </u>	 identify a hazard avoid a hazard recognize the consequence

GuardPLC is a trademark of Rockwell Automation.

Modbus is a registered trademark of Schneider Automation, Inc.

Preface

Who Should Use This Manual	P-1
Purpose of this Manual	P-1
Related Documentation	P-1

C

Overview of Safety Controllers

hapter 1	
----------	--

Using This Chapter	1-1
Safety Concept	1-1
Response to Faults	1-2
Safe States	1-2
Inputs	1-2
Outputs	1-3
Hardware Overview	1-3
GuardPLC 1200 System	1-3
GuardPLC 1600 and GuardPLC 1800 System	1-4
Distributed I/O for GuardPLC	1-5
GuardPLC 2000 System	1-6
GuardPLC 2000 Power Supply	1-7
1755-IB24XOB16 I/O Module	1-7
1755-IF8 Analog Input Module	1-7
1755-OF8 Analog Output Module	1-8
1755-HSC High Speed Counter Module	1-8
Communication Capabilities	1-8
GuardPLC Ethernet	1-8
ASCII.	1-9
Modbus RTU Slave	1-9
Profibus DP Slave	1-10
OPC Server	1-10

Installation

Using This Chapter	2-1
European Communities (EC) Directive Compliance	2-1
EMC Directive	2-1
Low Voltage Directive	2-2
General Safety	2-2
Mounting	2-2
GuardPLC 1200	2-2
DIN Rail Mounting	2-3
Back Panel Mounting	2-4
GuardPLC 1600, GuardPLC 1800, and Distributed I/O	2-4
GuardPLC 2000 Chassis	2-5
GuardPLC 2000 Controller, I/O, and Power Supply	2-7
Communication Connections	2-9
GuardPLC 1200	2-9
GuardPLC 1600 and GuardPLC 1800	2-10

Connections for Safety-Related Communication Connections for Non-Safety-Related	2-10
Communications	2-11
GuardPLC Distributed I/O Modules	2-12
GuardPLC 2000	2-12
Connections for Safety-Related Communication	2-12
Connections for Non-Safety-Related Communication	2-13
Reset Pushbutton	2-13
	U
Chapter 3	
Using This Chapter	3-1
GuardPLC Wiring Examples.	3-2
GuardPLC 1600	3-2
GuardPLC 1800	3-3
1753-IB16	3-4
1753-OB16	3-5
1753 IB20YOB8	36
CuardDLC 1200	27
1755 IP2/VO16 Digital Input/Output Modules	20
1755 IEO Angles Lengt Madales)-0 2 0
1755-IF8 Analog input Modules	3-9
1/55-OF8 Analog Output Modules	3-9
1/55-HSC High Speed Counter Module	3-10
General Wiring Considerations	3-11
Safety-Related Digital Inputs	3-11
Safety-Related Digital Outputs	3-11
Safety-Related Analog Inputs	3-12
High Speed Counters	3-13
Safety-Related Analog Outputs	3-14
Power Supply Considerations	3-15
GuardPLC 1600/1800 Controllers and Distributed I/O	3-16
GuardPLC 1200	3-16
GuardPLC 2000	3-16
GuardPLC 1600 Terminal Connections and	
Other Considerations.	3-17
Safety-Related Digital Inputs	3-17
Safety-Related Digital Outputs.	3-18
GuardPLC 1800 Terminal Connections and	0 -
Other Considerations	3-18
Safety-Related Digital Inputs	3_10
Safety Related Digital Outputs	3_20
Safety Related Analog Inputs	2_20
Safety Polated High Speed Counter	J-40 2 DD
5arety Kelaled Fight Speed Counter.	<u> </u>
1/33-1010 Terminal Connections and	2 22
Duller Considerations.	5-22
Pulse Test Sources	3-22
Safety-Related Digital Inputs	3-23

Wiring

1753-OB16 Terminal Connections and
Other Considerations
Operating Voltage Considerations
1753-IB20XOB8 Terminal Connections and
Other Considerations
Safety-Related Digital Inputs
Safety-Related Digital Outputs
GuardPLC 1200 Terminal Connections and
Other Considerations
Lower Terminal Block
Upper Terminal Block
GuardPLC 2000 Terminal Connections and
Other Considerations
1755-IB24XOB16 Digital I/O Module
1755-IF8 Analog Input Module
1755-OF8 Analog Output Module
1755-HSC Counter Modules 3-33
Grounding
Grounding Considerations for All Controllers 3-34
GuardPLC 1200
GuardPLC 1600 and GuardPLC 1800 Controllers and
Distributed I/O
GuardPLC 2000
Preventing Electrostatic Discharge 3-35

Chapter 4

Using This Chapter
Connecting to the Controller via RSLogix Guard PLUS 4-1
Connecting to a GuardPLC 1200 Controller
Connecting to a GuardPLC 1600 or 1800 Controller 4-2
Connecting to a GuardPLC 2000 Controller 4-2
GuardPLC Factory Defaults 4-2
Understanding Ethernet Addressing 4-2
Configure the IP Address of Vour Programming Terminal 4-3
Coing Online with the CuardDLC Controller
Control of the start of the sta
Step 1: Open RSLogix Guard PLUS 4-6
Step 2: Create a New Project 4-6
Step 3: Configure the Controller Type and SRS 4-7
Step 4: Communication Settings
Step 5: Change Settings via MAC Address
Step 6: Move the Settings Into Your Offline Project 4-11
Step 7: Use the Control Panel to Connect to the
GuardPLC
Step 8: Change the Controller to STOP Mode
Step 9: Reset the Controller to the Default Settings 4-14
Step 10: Ping the Controller

Connecting to the GuardPLC Controller

Creating Your First GuardPLC	
Draigat	

Project

Check, Download, Start, and Test a Routine

Using the Control Panel

Step 11. Configure the GuardPIC Controller's
Step 11. Configure the Guardrice Controller's
IP Address
Step 12: Recovering from a Controller Fault After
Using the RESET Button
Configuring the Programming Terminal 4-19
Specify Host SRS 4-19
Login Dialog
Determining the IP Address and SRS of the Controller 4-21
Changing the SRS of the Controller
Changing the IP Address of the Controller

Chapter 5

-	
Using This Chapter	5-1
Start a New Project	5-1
Configure the Project and Hardware	5-3
Create Signals and Connect Them to I/O Points	5-5
Create a Function Block Program.	5-9
Save, Compile, Test, and Download the Program	5-12
Save the Program	5-12
Compile the Code	5-12
Run an Off-Line Simulation	5-13
Download the Program	5-15
How to Monitor the Routine Online	5-17

Chapter 6

Using This Chapter	61
	0-1
Checking Consistency	6-1
Downloading a Routine	6-2
Troubleshooting the Download Process	6-3
Checking the SRS of the Controller	6-3
Updating the SRS in the Controller	6-3
Starting a Routine	6-4
Testing a Routine	6-5
How a Routine Executes	6-6
Controlling a Routine	6-6

Using This Chapter	7-1
Resource State Tab	7-2
Safety Parameters Tab	7-3
Statistics Tab.	7-4
P2P (Peer-to-Peer) State Tab	7-4
Distributed I/O Tab.	7-5
HH (High-Level High-Speed) State Tab	7-6
Environment Data Tab	7-6

	OS Tab Using the Multi-Control Panel	. 7-7 . 7-8
	Control Panel Resource Menu	. 7-11 . 7-12
	Chapter 8	
Controller Configuration and Modes of Operation	Using This Chapter Controller Modes Recovering From A FAILURE_STOP Controller Configuration Routine Modes Load a Configuration and Routine (in STOP mode only) Test Mode of the Routine	. 8-1 . 8-1 . 8-4 . 8-5 . 8-5 . 8-8 . 8-9 . 8-10
	Chapter 9	
Monitoring and Forcing Signals	Using This Chapter	 . 9-1 . 9-3 . 9-4 . 9-4 . 9-5 . 9-6 . 9-7 . 9-8
Access Management	Chapter 10 Using This Chapter	. 10-1
Ū	How the Controller Uses Access Levels Creating User Access	. 10-1 . 10-2
	Chapter 11	
Diagnostics	Using This Chapter	. 11-1 . 11-1 . 11-3 . 11-3 . 11-3 . 11-4 . 11-5 . 11-5 . 11-6 . 11-6 . 11-6 . 11-7
	Controller Indicators	. 11-7 . 11-7 . 11-8

Peer-to-Peer Communication	
Overview	

Ethernet Communication Indicators
Serial Communication Indicators
1755-IB24XOB16 LEDs 11-9
Power Supply and Module Status
I/O Status
1755-IF8 Analog Input Module LEDs 11-10
1755-OF8 Analog Output Module LEDs 11-11
1755-HSC Combination High-Speed Counter and
Output Module LEDs
Power Supply and Module Status
I/O Status

•
Using This Chapter
Peer-to-Peer Communication Basics
Networking Limitations
Network Configuration 12-3
HH Protocol Parameters 12-3
Token Group ID
Protocol Mode
Normal
RAW
Link Mode
TCS Direct
ТСЅ ТОКСҮС 12-5
Response Time
Token Cycle Time
Token Alive Timeout
Primary Timeout
Secondary Interval 12-0
Link Mode (Extern) 12-6
Response Time (Extern)
Peer-to-Peer Protocol Parameters
Message Response Time (ReponseTime)
Receive Timeout (ReceiveTMO)
Resend Timeout (ResendTMO)
Acknowledge Timeout (AckTMO) 12-9
Oueue Length (OueueLen)
Production Rate (ProdRate)
Watchdog Time (WDZ)
Worst-Case Reaction Time (TR) 12-10
HH Network Profiles
Profile I: Fast
Profile II: Medium
Using LAN Switches and Hubs
The "None" Profile

Peer-to-Peer Network Profiles 12-17
Peer-to-Peer Profile I: Fast & Cleanroom
Fast & Cleanrooom Characteristics
Peer-to-Peer Profile II: Fast & Noisy
Fast & Noisy Characteristics
Peer-to-Peer Profile III: Medium & Cleanroom 12-20
Medium & Cleanroom Characteristics
Peer-to-Peer Profile IV: Medium & Noisy 12-21
Medium & Noisy Characteristics
Peer-to-Peer Profile V: Slow & Cleanroom 12-22
Slow & Cleanroom Characteristics
Peer-to-Peer Profile IV: Slow & Noisy
Slow & Noisy Characteristics

Configuring Peer-to-Peer Communication

Using This Chapter
Considerations for Using Peer-to-Peer 13-1
Setting Peer-to-Peer Controller Properties
Communication Time Slice
Code Generator Version
Create a Peer-to-Peer Network
Create Token Group(s) 13-5
Add Controllers to Token Group(s)
Configure Token Group(s)13-6
Design the Logic
Create Peer-to-Peer Signals
Use Peer-to-Peer System Signals
Input System Signals
Output System Signal
Design the Logic for all Controllers
Design Logic for Robot A
Design Logic for Robot B
Configure Peer-to-Peer Communication
Define Controller Connections
Assign HH-Network 13-12
Select Peer-to-Peer Profile
Define Peer-to-Peer Parameters
Define The Signals to Exchange Between Each
Controller Connection
Compile and Download 13-16
Compile Logic
Start Download 13-16
Network Optimizing
Check Routine Timing 13-18
Reconfigure Watchdog Time 13-19
Check HH Status

	Check Peer-to-Peer Status.13-21Reconfigure ResponseTime13-22Reconfigure Receive Timeout13-23
	Chapter 14
Communicating with ASCII Devices	Using This Chapter14-1Connecting the Controller to an ASCII Device14-1Connecting to a GuardPLC 1200 Controller14-1Connecting to a GuardPLC 1600 or 1800 Controller14-2Connecting to a GuardPLC 2000 Controller14-3Configuring the ASCII Serial Port14-4Connecting Signals14-5ASCII Protocol14-6ASCII slave - controller response14-7Data type formats14-9
	Chapter 15
Communicating with Modbus and Profibus Devices	Using This Chapter15-1Modbus RTU Slave15-1Connecting the Controller to a Modbus Device15-2Configuring the Modbus Serial Port15-2Connecting Signals15-3Profibus DP Slave15-5Connecting the Controller to a Profibus DP Device15-5Configuring the Profibus DP Serial Port15-6Connecting Signals15-7Configuring the Profibus Master15-7
Pulse Testing	Chapter 16 Wiring for Line Control 16-1 GuardPLC 1600 and 1753-IB20XOB8. 16-1 1753-IB16 16-2 Response to Faults 16-3 Configuration for Line Control 16-4 Required Signals 16-4 Pulse Outputs 16-4
	Chanter 17
Creating User-Defined Function Blocks	Using This Chapter

Moving Declared Variables to the User-Defined	
Function Block Page 1	17-10
Generating Function Block Code	17-11
Checking for Errors and Warnings 1	17-12

Using High-Speed Counters

Configuring the GuardPLC OPC

Server

Specifications

Chapter 18

Using This Chapter
Counter/Decoder Modes
Counter Mode
Tips for Using Counters in a GuardPLC System 18-1
Counter Mode Inputs 18-2
Decoder Mode
Decoder Mode Inputs
Understanding Counter Module Configuration
Counter Mode/Manual Direction
Counter Mode/Direction and Reset
Decoder Mode/Gray Codes 18-5

Chapter 19

0.1
7-1
9-2
9-2
9-3
9-3
9-4
9-6
9-6
9-7
9-8
9-8
9-8

Appendix A

GuardPLC 1200 A-1
GuardPLC 1600 A-2
GuardPLC 1800 A-4
Distributed I/O
1753-IB16 Input Module
1753-IB20XOB8 Combination I/O Module A-7
1753-OB16 Output Module
GuardPLC 2000 Controller A-10
GuardPLC 2000 Distributed I/O Modules
1755-IB24XOB16 Digital I/O Module A-11
1755-IF8 Analog Input Module A-12

	1755-OF8 Analog Output Module A-13 1755-HSC High Speed Counter Module A-14
	GuardPLC 2000 Power Supply A-15
	Appendix B
System Variables	Using This Appendix B-1
	Programming Controller Data B-1
	I/O Variables B-3 Digital I/O Module Variables (AB-DIO) for
	GuardPLC 1200 and 2000
	GuardPLC 2000
	GuardPLC 2000
	GuardPLC 1200 and 2000 B-8
	Digital Input Module Variables for
	GuardPLC 1600 and DIO B-11 Digital Output Module Variables for
	GuardPLC 1600, 1800 and DIO B-13
	Counter Module Variables for GuardPLC 1800
	Controllers
	GuardPLC 1800 Controller
	Appendix C
Replacing the Backup Battery	Preventing Electrostatic Discharge C-1
	GuardPLC 1200
	GuardPLC 2000 Power Supply C-2

Index

Who Should Use This Manual	Use this manual if you are responsible for designing, installing, programming, or troubleshooting control systems that use GuardPLC controllers.
	Personnel responsible for installation, programming, operation, and troubleshooting of safety-related controllers must be familiar with relevant safety standards for Programmable Electronic Systems (PES).
Purpose of this Manual	The manual only briefly describes the safety concept of the GuardPLC family of controllers. Its purpose is to provide the information on installing and operating your controller system.
	For detailed information on the safety policy regarding GuardPLC controllers, including information on the controller's central functions, input and output channels, operating system, application program safety and regulations for use, refer to the <i>GuardPLC Controller Systems Safety Reference Manual</i> , publication number 1755-RM001.
Related Documentation	The table on the following page lists documents that contain additional information concerning Rockwell Automation GuardPLC products. If you would like a copy, you can:
	• download a free electronic version from the internet: www.theautomationbookstore.com
	• purchase a printed manual by:
	 – contacting your local distributor or Rockwell Automation representative
	 visiting www.theautomationbookstore.com and placing your order
	 – calling 1.800.963.9548 (USA/Canada) or 001.330.725.1574 (Outside USA/Canada)

For	Read this Document	Document Number
In-depth information on the safety concept of GuardPLC controller systems	GuardPLC Controller Systems Safety Reference Manual	1755-RM001
Information on installing 1754-L28BBB GuardPLC 1200 Controllers.	1754-L28BBB GuardPLC 1200 Installation Instructions	1754-IN001
Information on installing 1755-A6 GuardPLC 2000 I/O Chassis.	1755-A6 GuardPLC 2000 I/O Chassis Installation Instructions	1755-IN001
Information on installing 1755-L1 GuardPLC 2000 Controllers.	1755-L1 GuardPLC 2000 Controller Installation Instructions	1755-IN002
Information on installing 1755-IB24XOB16 GuardPLC 2000 Digital Input Modules.	1755-IB24XOB16 GuardPLC 2000 Digital Input Module Installation Instructions	1755-IN003
Information on installing 1755-IF8 GuardPLC 2000 Analog Input Modules.	1755-IF8 GuardPLC 2000 Analog Input Module Installation Instructions	1755-IN004
Information on installing 1755-OF8 GuardPLC 2000 Analog Output Modules.	1755-OF8 GuardPLC 2000 Analog Output Module Installation Instructions	1755-IN005
Information on installing 1755-HSC GuardPLC 2000 High Speed Counter Modules.	1755-HSC GuardPLC 2000 High Speed Counter Module Installation Instructions	1755-IN006
Information on installing 1755-PB720 GuardPLC 2000 Power Supplies.	1755-PB720 GuardPLC 2000 Power Supply Installation Instructions	1755-IN007
Information on installing GuardPLC 1600 controllers	GuardPLC 1600 Controllers Installation Instructions	1753-IN001
Information on installing GuardPLC 1800 controllers	GuardPLC 1800 Controllers Installation Instructions	1753-IN002
Information on installing GuardPLC 1753-IB20X0B8 I/O module	GuardPLC 1753-IB20X0B8 I/O Module Installation Instructions	1753-IN003
Information on installing GuardPLC 1753-IB16 Input Module	GuardPLC 1753-IB16 Input Module Installation Instructions	1753-IN004
Information on installing GuardPLC 1753-OB16 Output Module	GuardPLC 1753-0B16 Output Module Installation Instructions	1753-IN005
Information on installing and uninstalling RSLogix Guard PLUS software	RSLogix Guard PLUS Programming Software Installation Instructions	1753-IN006
Information on installing and uninstalling the GuardPLC OPC Server	GuardPLC OPC Server Installation Instructions	1753-IN007
In-depth information on grounding and wiring Allen-Bradley programmable controllers	Allen-Bradley Programmable Controller Grounding and Wiring Guidelines	1770-4.1
A description of important differences between solid-state programmable controller products and hard-wired electromechanical devices	Application Considerations for Solid-State Controls	SGI-1.1
An article on wire sizes and types for grounding electrical equipment	National Electrical Code - Published by the National Fi Association of Boston, MA.	re Protection
A glossary of industrial automation terms and abbreviations	Allen-Bradley Industrial Automation Glossary	AG-7.1

Overview of Safety Controllers

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
understanding the safety concept	1-1
safe states	1-2
GuardPLC system hardware	1-3
communication capabilities	1-8

Safety Concept

GuardPLC controllers feature a fail-safe CPU according to IEC 61508 (SIL3) and EN954-1 (Cat.4). Faults that cause loss of safety function are detected within the safety time you specify. Faults that cause loss of safety function only in combination with another fault, are detected at least within the multiple error occurrence time (24 hours).

This results in the following requirements for the safety concept:

- You specify the safety time and the watchdog time. The multiple error occurrence time is preset to 24 hours.
- Even upon the detection of an error, the controller continues to react in a safety-related way.
- Faulty input signals (e.g. incorrectly transmitted input values) do not affect the safe function of the controller. Faulted input signals have a "0" value.
- An error in a non-safety-related module does not affect the safety of the controller.
- The failure of the controller has no effect on the safety of other safety-related modules.

For more information on the safety concept, see the *GuardPLC Controllers Safety Reference Manual*, publication 1755-RM001.

Response to Faults

Type of I/O error:	Controller behavior:
permanent	If an error occurs at an I/O point, only this I/O point is considered faulty and not the entire module.
	In case of faulty input points, "0" is assumed to be the safe value. Faulty output channels are de-energized. If it is not possible to de-energize a single point, the entire module is considered to be faulty, the entire module is de-energized, and the corresponding error status is set. The controller reports the error to the user program. If the entire module cannot be de-energized, the controller goes to FAILURE_STOP.
transient	A transient error is an error that occurs in an I/O module and then disappears by itself. If a transient error occurs, the module performs a self test. If the test is successful, the status of the I/O module is set to "good" and the module's normal function continues.
	In the process, the GuardPLC controller performs a statistical evaluation of the frequency of errors. The I/O module is permanently set to "faulty" if the pre-set error frequency is exceeded. In this case, the module does not resume its normal function after the error has disappeared. To resume normal function, you must cycle power or change the controller to STOP and then RUN.
	If an error persists for a period of time exceeding that of the multiple error occurrence time (24 hours), the I/O module is permanently set to "faulty" and does not continue normal function after the disappearance of the error. The I/O module can only resume normal function after you cycle power or STOP/START the controller.
	For faulty modules, the controller uses safe values ("0", LOW).
controller	Upon the detection of an error, the controller goes to FAILURE_STOP and all output channels are set to the safe state (value = "0").
	In some cases in which a FAILURE_STOP occurs, a power cycle will not enable normal operation. A manual reset from STOP to RUN, using RSLogix Guard PLUS, is required. CAT 4 faults typically require manual resets.
	An error in the user program is not considered an error of the controller.
	The controller also monitors the timing and consistency of the:

- hardware self-tests and software self-tests of the controller
- cycle of the user program
- processing of the I/O signals including I/O tests
- RUN cycle of the controller
- transition from RUN to STOP

Safe States

Inputs

The safe state of an input is indicated by a 0 signal being passed to the user program logic. When a fault occurs, the inputs are switched off (0).

Outputs

An output is in the safe state when it is de-energized. In the event of a fault, all outputs are switched off. This includes faults in Ethernet communication.

Hardware Overview

GuardPLC 1200 System

The GuardPLC 1200 is a compact system consisting of a CPU, watchdog, and on-board digital I/O. The GuardPLC 1200 features 20 digital inputs, 8 digital outputs, and 2 high-speed counters. An RS-232 serial port supports ASCII communications and an Ethernet port provides safety-related communication. A user-supplied 24V dc power supply is required. See page 2-2 for power supply requirements and page 3-15 for power supply connections.

Figure 1.1 GuardPLC 1200 Controller



GuardPLC 1600 and GuardPLC 1800 System



Figure 1.2 GuardPLC 1600 Controller

The GuardPLC 1600 system features 20 digital inputs, 8 digital outputs with the addition of optional distributed Safety I/O. The GuardPLC 1800 system features 24 digital inputs, 8 digital outputs, 8 safety-related analog outputs, and 2 high speed counters, as well as optional distributed Safety I/O. The status of inputs and outputs is indicated via LEDs. A user-supplied 24Vdc power supply is required. See page 3-15 for information on power supply requirements.

Each controller features four 10/100BaseT, RJ-45 connectors to provide safety-related communications via GuardPLC Ethernet to distributed I/O and other GuardPLC controllers, OLE for Process Control (OPC) servers⁽¹⁾, and with RSLogix Guard PLUS programming software. The four connectors and the controller are connected via an internal Ethernet switch.

(1) The OPC server is not suitable for safety-related communications.

Serial Port Designation	Function
COMM1 (RS-485)	Modbus RTU Slave (1753-L28BBBM or 1753-L32BBBM-8A) Profibus-DP-Slave (1753-L28BBBP or 1753-L32BBBP-8A) Read/Write
COMM2	not used
COMM3 (RS-485)	GuardPLC ASCII Protocol (Read-only)

Three ports are located on the front of the controller, providing the following non-safety-related communication options:

Distributed I/O for GuardPLC

Figure 1.4 GuardPLC Bulletin 1753 I/O





Ethernet Ports (on bottom of module)

Digital Outputs

Three modules are available for use with the GuardPLC 1600, GuardPLC 1800, series C GuardPLC 1200 controllers and series C GuardPLC 2000 CPUs. Module status is indicated via LEDs.

Catalog Number	Description	Inputs	Outputs
1753-IB16	Input Module	16 digital (not isolated) 4 pulse test sources	NA
1753-0B16	Output Module	NA	16 digital (not isolated)
1753-IB20X0B8	Input/Output Module	20 digital (not isolated)	8 digital (not isolated)

GuardPLC 2000 System

The GuardPLC 2000 is a modular system consisting of a controller (1755-L1), which provides central CPU and communications functions, and a separate power supply and I/O residing in a GuardPLC 1755-A6 chassis. A maximum of six I/O modules may be used in a single system.

The GuardPLC 2000 controller has one active RS-232 serial port for non-safety related communications. It also features an Ethernet port for configuration and safety-related communications. The lower DB9 port supports RS-232 ASCII (read-only) communications; the upper port is inactive.



Figure 1.5 GuardPLC 2000 Controller, Power Supply, and I/O Modules



The 1755-PB720 power supply module provides two voltages (3.3V dc and 5V dc) for the GuardPLC 2000. They are electrically isolated from the supply voltage, 24V dc.

1755-IB24X0B16 I/O Module

The 1755-IB24XOB16 digital input/output module provides 24 digital inputs and 16 digital outputs. The status of each I/O signal is displayed with an LED located on the right side of the front plate connectors. Inputs and outputs are electrically isolated from the supply voltage, 24V dc.

1755-IF8 Analog Input Module

The 1755-IF8 analog input module has eight inputs. These inputs can be used as either eight single-ended inputs or four differential analog inputs which are electrically isolated from the logic side of the GuardPLC. The measured input value can be either voltage or current. If you use the input module for current, you need a shunt resistor. The measured value is digitally transferred to the processor system as a value between 0 and 2000.

1755-OF8 Analog Output Module

The 1755-OF8 analog output module provides eight outputs, galvanically isolated in groups of 2 (i.e. 2 outputs per power supply). They are electrically isolated from the processor system. Each analog output can operate as a current source or a voltage source.

1755-HSC High Speed Counter Module

The 1755-HSC counter module provides two counters and four digital outputs. They are electrically isolated from the processor system. The status of the four output signals is displayed with LEDs located at the right side of the front plate output connector.

Communication Capabilities

GuardPLC Ethernet

GuardPLC Ethernet provides safe communication via Ethernet for distributed I/O and peer-to-peer communications for all GuardPLC controllers. It also provides non-safety-related communication with the OPC server. Programming and configuration of controllers is accomplished via GuardPLC Ethernet.

Various GuardPLC systems can be networked together via GuardPLC Ethernet, using star or daisy-chain configurations. A programming device running RSLogix Guard PLUS can also be connected wherever required.

IMPORTANT Make sure that a network loop is not generated. Data packets must only be able to reach a node via a single path.



Figure 1.6 GuardPLC Ethernet Networking Example

ASCII

This read-only, non-safety-related protocol can be used to extract diagnostic and status information from the GuardPLC controllers. ASCII protocol is available over the RS-232 port on the GuardPLC 1200 and GuardPLC 2000 controllers and via the RS-485 Comm 3 port on GuardPLC 1600 and GuardPLC 1800 controllers.

See Chapter 14 for details on communication with ASCII devices.

Modbus RTU Slave

Modbus is a standard industrial non-safety-related serial protocol in which the Modbus master can communicate with a maximum of 255 slave devices. The Modbus master initiates and controls all communications on the network.

Modbus RTU Slave protocol is available via the RS-485 Comm 1 port on GuardPLC 1600 and GuardPLC 1800 controllers with catalog numbers ending in "M". Modbus RTU Slave protocol allows both the reading and writing of data.

For more information on the Modbus RTU Slave protocol, see the Modbus Protocol Specifications, available from **www.modicon.com/techpubs**/.

Profibus DP Slave

Profibus DP is a non-safety-related serial protocol, designed for high-speed data transmission between automation systems and distributed peripherals.

Profibus DP slave is available via the RS-485 Comm 1 port on GuardPLC 1600 and GuardPLC 1800 controllers with catalog numbers ending in "P".

Profibus DP Slave protocol allows both the reading and writing of data.

OPC Server

The GuardPLC 1600, GuardPLC 1800, and series C GuardPLC 1200 and 2000 are OPC clients. An OPC server, catalog number 1753-OPC, is available from Rockwell Automation and allows PC applications to read and write data to and from the GuardPLC (non-safety-related communications only).

Installation

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
European Communities (EC) Directive Compliance	2-1
mounting	2-2
communication connections	2-9
reset pushbutton	2-13

European Communities (EC) Directive Compliance

If this product has the CE mark it is approved for installation within the European Union and EEA regions. It has been designed and tested to meet the following directives.

EMC Directive

This product is tested to meet the Council Directive 89/336/EC Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) by applying the following standards, in whole or in part:

- EN 50081-2 EMC Generic Emission Standard, Part 2 Industrial Environment
- EN 50082-2 EMC Generic Immunity Standard, Part 2 Industrial Environment
- EN 61131-2 Programmable Controllers, Part 2: Equipment Requirements and Tests
- EN 61000-6.2 EMC Part 6-2: Generic Standards Immunity for Industrial Environments

This product is intended for use in an industrial environment.

Low Voltage Directive

The power supply of the GuardPLC controllers must meet Council Directive 73/23/EEC Low Voltage, by applying the requirements of EN 61131-2 Programmable Controllers, Part 2 – Equipment Requirements and Tests, as well as one of the following:

- EN 60950 SELV (Safety Extra Low Voltage)
- EN 60204 PELV (Protective Extra Low Voltage)

General Safety

Open style devices must be provided with environmental and safety protection by proper mounting in enclosures designed for specific application conditions. See NEMA Standards publication 250 and IEC publication 60529, as applicable, for explanations of the degrees of protection provided by different types of enclosure.

	Consider the following before installing your GuardPLC 1200/1600/1800 controller or distributed I/O:
<u> </u>	These products are grounded through the DIN rail. Use zinc-plated yellow-chromate steel DIN rails to assure proper grounding. The use of other DIN rail materials (e.g. aluminum, plastic, etc.) that can corrode, oxidize, or are poor conductors, can result in improper or intermittent grounding.

Mounting

GuardPLC 1200

The GuardPLC 1200 can be either snapped onto a DIN rail or mounted to a back panel using bolts. DIN rail mounting is the easiest way to attach the controller and should be used wherever possible.

IMPORTANT	For cooling reasons:
	• The GuardPLC 1200 must be mounted horizontally with the Ethernet socket facing down.
	• Select a location where air flows freely or use an additional cooling fan.
	• The minimum clearance around the GuardPLC 1200 must be at least 100 mm.
	• Do not mount the GuardPLC 1200 over a heating device.

DIN Rail Mounting

- **1.** Hook the two top latches, on the back of the GuardPLC 1200, over the top of the DIN rail.
- **2.** If the lower latches are extended (see figure below), push them up until they lock into place. If the lower latches are not extended, press the GuardPLC 1200 into the DIN rail until they lock into place.



TIP

If you need to remove the controller from the DIN rail, use a screwdriver to pull down the lower latches, then lift the controller toward you. Back Panel Mounting



Use the four brackets on the GuardPLC 1200 to mount it onto a back panel.



Use the following to mount the controller:

Top Brackets	Bottom Brackets
M4 screws (2)	M5 screws (2)
lock washer	lock washer
washers	washers
nut	nut

If the mounting brackets are not flat before the nuts are tightened, use additional washers as shims, so the controller does not bend when you tighten the nuts.

GuardPLC 1600, GuardPLC 1800, and Distributed I/O

IMPORTANT	For effective cooling:
	• Mount the device horizontally.
	• Provide a gap of at least 100 mm (3.94 in.) above and below the device and at least 20 mm (0.79 in.) horizontally between devices.
	• Wire duct can run in the 100 mm (3.94 in.) of free space above and below the controller if it is no deeper than 40 mm (1.58 in.). If the depth is greater than 40 mm (1.58 in.), the devices must be placed on stand-offs that match the depth of the duct. If stand-offs are not used, you must provide a gap of at least 80 mm (3.15 in.) between the device and the duct.
	• Select a location where air flows freely or use an additional fan.
	• Do not mount the controller or I/O module over a heating device.
	• Do not block the ventilation slots on the side of the device.

1) Top Slot

DIN Rail

GuardPLC 1600/1800 controllers and I/O cannot be panel-mounted. Mount the GuardPLC 1600/1800 controllers and distributed I/O to a DIN rail by following the steps below.

- **1.** Hook the top slot over the DIN rail.
- **2.** Insert a flathead screwdriver into the gap between the housing and the latch and pull the latch downward.
- **3.** Hold the latch down as you push the housing back onto the DIN rail.
- 4. Release the latch to lock the device onto the rail.
 - TIP To remove the device from the DIN rail, insert a flathead screwdriver into the gap between the housing and the latch and pull the latch downward as you lift the device off of the rail.

GuardPLC 2000 Chassis

The GuardPLC 2000 provides two flanges with eyelets. Refer to the illustration below. Use bolts to mount the system to a back panel.

To mount the chassis flanges, you will need four M8 size bolts with lock washer, washer and nut with 13 mm (max.) head diameter. The bolts must be long enough to accept the chassis at its mounting place.



- Do not bend the chassis. Bending will damage the chassis and/or the backplane inside the GuardPLC 2000.
- If the rear side of the chassis does not lie flat before the nuts are tightened, use additional washers as shims so that the chassis does not bend when you tighten the nuts.

• The chassis must be installed without any modules inserted.
• Discomment the superbrack before mounting.

- Disconnect the supply voltage before mounting the chassis.
- The chassis must be vertically mounted with the cooling fans on the lower side.
- Do not obstruct ventilation openings.
- Provide a gap of at least 100 mm (3.94 in.) above and below the device and at least 20 mm (0.79 in.) horizontally between devices.



GuardPLC 2000 Controller, I/O, and Power Supply

Mount the GuardPLC 2000 chassis prior to installing the controller, I/O, and power supply modules.

IMPORTANT Disconnect the power supply module, 1755-PB720, from the 24V dc supply voltage before you insert the module.

1. Before you insert the module, you must detach the grounding grill. To do this, remove the grounding grill screws (see figure below).



- 2. Remove the lower panel of the chassis and disconnect the fans.
- **3. Power Supply:** Insert the power supply into the left-most slot of the chassis.

Controller: Insert the controller into the slot directly to the right of the power supply module (slot 0).

I/O Module: Insert the module into any unused slot from 1 to 6 (see figure on page 2-8). Keep the module in line with the guides so the module runs smoothly in the track.

- **4.** Begin pushing the module into the chassis. If there is resistance when you push the module into the backplane, do not force the module because the pins will bend. Remove the module and start again at step 3.
- **5.** Continue pushing the module into the chassis until the front of the module is flush with the other modules in the chassis.
- **6.** Secure the module with the module screws on the top and bottom of the module (see figure on page 2-8).



TIP

If you are installing other GuardPLC 2000 modules, follow their Installation Instructions up to this point before you complete the next 3 steps.

- 7. Reconnect the fans.
- **8.** Replace the lower panel of the chassis, sliding it over the tabs on the sides of the chassis and under the tabs on the back of the chassis.
- 9. Use the grounding grill screws to attach the grounding grill.

Communication Connections

GuardPLC 1200

The GuardPLC 1200 has an ASCII serial port for non-safety-related communications and an Ethernet port for safety-related communications.

Connect the ASCII port to any RS-232 device that has the capability to send ASCII command strings to the controller. The controller replies with a data variable string. See Chapter 14 for more information on ASCII communications

Use the following illustration to connect the ASCII and Ethernet ports.



The pin assignment of the ASCII Serial port is shown below.



Pin	Function	
1	24V dc	
2	ground (GND)	
3	request to send (RTS)	
4	received data (RxD)	
5	received line signal detector (DCD)	
6	clear to send (CTS)	
7	transmitted data (TxD)	
8	ground (GND)	
9	not applicable	

GuardPLC 1600 and GuardPLC 1800

Connections for Safety-Related Communication

The controller has four 10/100BaseT, RJ-45 connectors to provide communications via GuardPLC Ethernet to other controllers, distributed I/O or RSLogix Guard PLUS. Connectors 1 and 2 are located on the bottom side on the left. Connectors 3 and 4 are located on the top side on the left.



All four connectors and the GuardPLC processor are connected together by an internal Ethernet switch. In contrast to a hub, a switch is able to store data packets for a short period of time in order to establish a temporary connection between two communication partners for the transfer of data. In this way, collisions (typical of a hub) can be avoided and the load on the network is reduced.

The switch automatically switches between transfer rates of 10 and 100 Mbit/s and between full- and half-duplex connections. This makes the full bandwidth available (full-duplex operation) in both directions.

A switch enables several connections to be established at the same time and can address up to 1000 absolute MAC addresses.

Auto-crossing recognizes that cables with crossed wires have been connected and the switch adjusts accordingly. Therefore, either cross-over or straight-through Ethernet cabling can be used.

Star or line configurations are available. Make sure that a network loop is not generated. Data packets must only be able to reach a node via a single path.

See Chapters 4 and 12 for information on programming via Ethernet and on peer-to-peer communications.

Connections for Non-Safety-Related Communications

Three 9-pin Min-D connectors are located on the front of the controller, providing the following communications:

Designation	Function
COMM1 (RS-485)	Modbus RTU Slave (1753-L28BBBM or 1753-L32BBBM-8A) Profibus-DP-Slave 1753-L28BBBP or 1753-L32BBBP-8A)
COMM2	not used
COMM3	GuardPLC ASCII Protocol



IMPORTANT

The three Min-D connectors are RS-485. You must use an electrical interface device to connect the controller to an RS-232 device.

The pin assignment of the Min-D connectors is shown in the table below.

Connection	Signal	Function
1		
2	RP	5V, decoupled with diodes
3	RxD/TxD-A	Receive/Transmit data A
4	CNTR-A	Control Signal A
5	DGND	Data reference potential
6	VP	5V, positive pole of supply voltage
7		
8	RxD/TxD-B	Receive/Transmit data B
9	CNTR-B	Control Signal B

GuardPLC Distributed I/O Modules

Each module has two 10/100BaseT, RJ-45 connectors to provide safety-related communications via GuardPLC Ethernet. These two connectors and the GuardPLC DIO module are connected together by an internal Ethernet switch.



GuardPLC 2000

Connections for Safety-Related Communication

To configure/program the GuardPLC system, the controller must be connected on an Ethernet network to the RSLogix Guard PLUS programming terminal. GuardPLC Ethernet also provides for Peer-to-Peer communication to distributed I/O and to other controllers.


Connections for Non-Safety-Related Communication

Connect the ASCII port (FB2) to any RS-232 device that has the capability to send ASCII command strings to the controller. The controller replies with a data variable string. See Chapter 14 for more information on ASCII communications.



Reset Pushbutton

GuardPLC 1600 and 1800 controllers and distributed I/O are equipped with a reset pushbutton. Reset via the pushbutton is necessary:

- if you forget the password to go online via the programming software, or
- if you are unable to determine the IP address and SRS of the controller

The pushbutton is accessible through a small round hole at the top of the housing, approximately 4 to 5 cm (1.6 to 2.0 in.) from the left rim and recessed approximately 9.5 mm (0.375 in.).

IMPORTANT Activate the reset pushbutton using an insulated pin to prevent short-circuits.

To reset, press and hold the pushbutton while rebooting the controller by cycling power. Hold the reset pushbutton until the PROG LED stops flashing. Pressing the Reset pushbutton during operation has no affect.

After a reset, the IP address, SRS and login accounts are temporarily reset to their default settings:

- IP = 192.168.0.99
- SRS = 60000.1
- login Username = Administrator
- login Password = [none]

At the next power cycle, these settings will be reset to the last values stored into Flash. This means that either:

- the settings prior to the reset will be restored, or
- if any settings were changed after the reset, these new settings will still be in effect.

Wiring

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
GuardPLC Wiring Examples	3-2
General Wiring Considerations	3-11
Power Supply Considerations	3-15
GuardPLC 1600 Terminal Connections and Other Considerations	3-17
GuardPLC 1800 Terminal Connections and Other Considerations	3-18
1753-IB16 Terminal Connections and Other Considerations	3-22
1753-OB16 Terminal Connections and Other Considerations	3-24
GuardPLC 1200 Terminal Connections and Other Considerations	3-27
GuardPLC 2000 Terminal Connections and Other Considerations	3-30
Grounding	3-34
Preventing Electrostatic Discharge	3-35

IMPORTANT

The wiring diagrams in this chapter detail only the wiring necessary to sense/control the I/O devices.

They do not show all of the wiring necessary to achieve CAT. 3 or CAT. 4 safety circuits.

For example, monitoring feedback signals is not illustrated.



GuardPLC Wiring Examples GuardPLC 1600



1753-IB16





1753-0B16



1753-IB20X0B8

GuardPLC 1200





1755-IB24X016 Digital Input/Output Modules

1755-IF8 Analog Input Modules



1755-OF8 Analog Output Modules







General Wiring Considerations

Terminals accommodate wire sizes up to 1.5 mm^2 (16 AWG) for input/output wiring and up to 2.5 mm^2 (14 AWG) for voltage supply connections.

Safety-Related Digital Inputs

The status of digital inputs is indicated via LEDs when the controller is in RUN mode.

Follow the closed-circuit principle for external wiring when connecting sensors. To create a safe state in the event of a fault, the input signals revert to the de-energized state (0). The external line is not monitored, but a wire break is interpreted as a safe (0) signal.

In general, the LS+ terminals, not L+ on the power supply connection, should be used to supply voltage for safety inputs. Each LS+ features individual short-circuit and EMC protection. Due to current limitations, use LS+ for only the safety inputs on the same terminal plug.

Safety-Related Digital Outputs

The status of digital outputs is indicated via LEDs when the controller is in RUN mode.

GuardPLC outputs are rated to either 0.5A or 1.0A at an ambient temperature of 60°C (140°F). At an ambient temperature of 50°C (122°F), outputs rated at 1.0A increase to 2.0A.

If an overload occurs, the affected outputs are turned off. When the overload is eliminated, the outputs are under the control of the controller and are energized based on the user program code.

An output is in the safe state when it is de-energized. Therefore, outputs are switched off when a fault that affects the safe control of those outputs occurs.

For connection of a load, the reference pole L- of the corresponding channel group must be used (2-pole connection). Although L- poles are connected internally to L- on the power supply input, it is strictly recommended to connect the L- reference poles only to their corresponding output group. EMC testing was performed in this manner.

> Inductive loads can be connected without a protection diode on the load, because there is a protection diode located within the GuardPLC. However, Rockwell Automation strongly recommends that a protection diode be fitted directly to the load to suppress any interference voltage. A 1N4004 diode is recommended.

Safety-Related Analog Inputs

TIP

GuardPLC safety controllers use analog inputs for the unipolar measurement of voltages from 0 to 10V, referenced to L-. A 10 K Ω shunt is used for single-ended voltage signals. With a 500 Ω shunt resistor, currents from 0 to 20 mA can also be measured.

The feeder lines should be no more than 300 m (284 ft.) in length. Use shielded, twisted-pair cables, with the shields connected at one end, for each measurement input.

Unused analog inputs must be short-circuited. Place wire jumpers to ground on any inputs that are not used.



Publication 1753-UM001A-EN-P - April 2004

Shielded cabling is fed in from below so that the shielding can be connected to the shield contact plate using a clip. Remove about 2 cm of the outer cable insulation so that the mesh is exposed at the point where the cable is clipped to the plate. Position the clip over the uninsulated cable shielding and push it into the slots of the shield contact plate until it fits firmly in place, as shown below.



High Speed Counters

The GuardPLC safety controllers feature inputs for high speed counting up to 1 MHz. These counters are 24-bit, and are configurable for either 5V or 24V dc. The table below shows the maximum input frequency of the counters by controller type.

Maximum Input Frequency	Controller Type
100 KHz	GuardPLC 1200 GuardPLC 1800
1 MHz	GuardPLC 2000 (1755-HSC)

The counters can be used as a counter or as a decoder for 3-bit Gray Code inputs. As a counter, input A is the counter input, input B is the counter direction input, and input Z is used for a reset.

The counter inputs must be connected using shielded, twisted-pair cables for each measurement input. The shields must be connected at both ends. The input lines should be no more than 500m in length. All reference (L-, C-, or I- depending on the controller) connections are interconnected on the module in the form of common reference pole.

Cables are clipped to the shield contact plate when connecting counter inputs. Remove about 2 cm of the outer cable insulation so that the mesh is exposed at the point where the cable is clipped to the plate.



To ensure that counters are used in a safety-related manner (SIL3 in accordance to IEC 61508), the whole system, including connected sensors and encoders, must satisfy these safety requirements. Refer to the *GuardPLC Controllers Safety Reference Manual*, publication number 1755-RM001, for more detailed information.

Safety-Related Analog Outputs

GuardPLC safety controllers use analog outputs to transfer analog values from the user program into outputs ranging from $\pm 10V$ dc to 0 to 20 mA. The relationship between the value in the user program and the output value is linear and is displayed in the following table.

Logic Value	Output Voltage	Output Current
0	0.00V	0.0 mA
1000	10.00V	20.0 mA
-1000	-10.00V	na

Unused current inputs must be short-circuited.

Shielded cabling is fed in from below so that the shielding can be connected to the shield contact plate using a clip. Remove about 2 cm of the outer cable insulation so that the mesh is exposed at the point where the cable is clipped to the plate. Position the clip over the uninsulated cable shielding and push it into the slots of the shield contact plate until it fits firmly in place, as shown below.



IMPORTANT

Make sure that the mesh comes in direct contact with the shield contact plate. If the mesh does not touch the plate, the cable is not grounded.

Power Supply Considerations

The power supply must provide a voltage between 20.4 and 28.8V dc. You must supply enough power to drive the controller, inputs, and outputs. To operate, GuardPLC controllers typically draw less than 1A at 24V dc. They require additional power to operate the inputs and outputs connected to the controller. Consider the power draw of the I/O when specifying the size of the power supply and required fusing.

The 24V dc voltage supply must feature galvanic isolation since inputs and outputs are not electrically isolated from the processor.⁽¹⁾ It must also meet the requirements of the Safety Extra Low Voltage (SELV – EN60950) or Protective Extra Low Voltage (PELV – EN60204) guidelines.

IMPORTANT Protect the controller with a slow-blowing fuse.

ATTENTION

 \bigwedge

Before connecting the power supply, check for correct polarity, value and ripple.

Do not reverse the L+ and L- terminals or damage to the controller will result. There is no reverse polarity protection.

(1) The I/O and CPU are only isolated from one another on the GuardPLC 2000.

GuardPLC 1600/1800 Controllers and Distributed I/O

The supply voltage is connected via a 4-pin connector which accommodates wire sizes up to 2.5 mm² (14 AWG). You only need to connect one wire to L+ and one wire to L-. Both L+ and L- terminals are internally connected. The other terminal can be used to daisy-chain 24V dc to additional devices. The power supply connector is rated to 10A.

GuardPLC 1200

Both terminals must be used in parallel to allow the maximum current of 8A. (Each terminal maximum is 4A so both are required for 8A.)

If the power supply has only one (+) lead, a short bridge jumper must be installed between $L+_{(1)}$ and $L+_{(2)}$.

TIP The GuardPLC 1200 requires approximately 0.5A to operate. The remaining 7.5A is used to source power for inputs and outputs.

GuardPLC 2000

The GuardPLC 2000 controller features several different modules. These modules and their current draw specifications are listed in the table below.

Module	Current Draw at 3.3V dc	Current Draw at 24V dc
1755-IB24X016	0.3A	0.5A
1755-IF8	0.15A	0.4A
1755-0F8	0.15A	0.4A
1755-HSC	0.8A	0.1A
1755-L1	1.5A	1.0A

TIP

The GuardPLC 2000 can draw up to 30A. The majority of this 30A is used to source inputs and outputs. Only 1A is required to operate the CPU module.

Connect the power supply unit, 1755-PB720, to the 24V dc supply voltage. Refer to the *GuardPLC 2000 Power Supply Installation Instructions*, publication number 1755-IN007, for detailed instructions.

GuardPLC 1600 Terminal Connections and Other Considerations

Safety-Related Digital Inputs



Digital inputs are connected to the following terminals:

Terminal Number	Designation	Function
13	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 1 to 4
14	1	Digital input 1
15	2	Digital input 2
16	3	Digital input 3
17	4	Digital input 4
18	L-	Reference pole
19	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 5 to 8
20	5	Digital input 5
21	6	Digital input 6
22	7	Digital input 7
23	8	Digital input 8
24	L-	Reference pole
25	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 9 to 12
26	9	Digital input 9
27	10	Digital input 10
28	11	Digital input 11
29	12	Digital input 12
30	L-	Reference pole
31	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 13 to 16
32	13	Digital input13
33	14	Digital input 14
34	15	Digital input 15
35	16	Digital input 16
36	L-	Reference pole

Terminal Number	Designation	Function
37	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 17 to 20
38	17	Digital input 17
39	18	Digital input 18
40	19	Digital input 19
41	20	Digital input 20
42	L-	Reference pole

Safety-Related Digital Outputs.



7 8 9 10 11 12 0000 D0 L- 5 6 7 8 L-(2A)

8 9 10 11 12

Digital outputs are connected to the following terminals:

Terminal Number	Designation	Function	Current
1	L-	Reference pole	
2	1	Digital output 1	0.5 A
3	2	Digital output 2	0.5 A
4	3	Digital output 3	0.5 A
5	4	Digital output 4 (for increased load)	2.0 A
6	L-	Reference pole	_
7	L-	Reference pole	
8	5	Digital output 5	0.5 A
9	6	Digital output 6	0.5 A
10	7	Digital output 7	0.5 A
11	8	Digital output 8 (for increased load)	2.0 A
12	L-	Reference pole	

GuardPLC 1800 Terminal Connections and Other Considerations

The controller has 24 digital inputs whose status is indicated via LEDs when in RUN mode. The digital inputs are actually analog inputs that provide the program with UINT values of 0 to 30V (0 to 3000), which are used to create limit values to calculate signals for the digital inputs. Default settings are:

- <7V = 0 signal
- >13V = 1 signal

The limit values are set using system variables. See page B-16 for more information on configuring these inputs.

TIP

Since digital inputs are actually analog values, the .USED variable must be set HI in the output signal connections dialog to activate the digital input. See step 6 on page 5-7 for an example.

Safety-Related Digital Inputs







Digital inputs are connected to the following terminals:

Terminal Number	Designation	Function
11	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 1 to 8
12	1	Digital input 1
13	2	Digital input 2
14	3	Digital input 3
15	4	Digital input 4
16	5	Digital input 5
17	6	Digital input 6
18	7	Digital input 7
19	8	Digital input 8
20	L-	reference pole
21	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 9 to 16
22	9	Digital input 9
23	10	Digital input 10
24	11	Digital input 11
25	12	Digital input 12
26	13	Digital input 13
27	14	Digital input 14
28	15	Digital input 15
29	16	Digital input 16
30	L-	Reference pole

Terminal Number	Designation	Function
31	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 17 to 24
32	17	Digital input 17
33	18	Digital input 18
34	19	Digital input 19
35	20	Digital input 20
36	21	Digital input 21
37	22	Digital input 22
38	23	Digital input 23
39	24	Digital input 24
40	L-	Reference pole

Safety-Related Digital Outputs



Digital outputs are connected to the following terminals:

Terminal Number	Designation	Function	Current
1	L-	Reference pole	
2	1	Digital output 1	0.5 A
3	2	Digital output 2	0.5 A
4	3	Digital output 3	0.5 A
5	4	Digital output 4 (for increased load)	2.0 A
6	5	Digital output 5	0.5 A
7	6	Digital output 6	0.5 A
8	7	Digital output 7	0.5 A
9	8	Digital output 8 (for increased load)	2.0 A
10	L-	Reference pole	

Safety-Related Analog Inputs

The GuardPLC 1800 features 8 single-ended analog inputs. Differential analog inputs cannot be used on the GuardPLC 1800. Two- or four-wire transmitters can be used. These devices can be powered from the transmitter supply terminal of the GuardPLC 1800 or from an external power supply.

IMPORTANT Unused analog inputs must be short-circuited. See page 3-12.



The analog inputs are connected to the following terminals:

Terminal Number	Designation	Function
41	T1	Transmitter supply 1
42	11	Analog input 1
43	L-	Reference pole
44	T2	Transmitter supply 2
45	12	Analog input 2
46	L-	Reference pole
47	T3	Transmitter supply 3
48	13	Analog input 3
49	L-	Reference pole
50	T4	Transmitter supply 4
51	14	Analog input 4
52	L-	Reference pole
53	T5	Transmitter supply 5
54	15	Analog input 5
55	L-	Reference pole
56	T6	Transmitter supply 6
57	16	Analog input 6
58	L-	Reference pole
59	T7	Transmitter supply 7
60	17	Analog input 7
61	L-	Reference pole
62	Т8	Transmitter supply 8
63	18	Analog input 8
64	L-	Reference pole

Safety Related High Speed Counter



Counters are connected to the following terminals:

Terminal Number	Designation	Counter Function	Gray Code Function
65	A1	Input A1	bit 0 (LSB)
66	B1	Input B1	bit 1
67	Z1	Input Z1	bit 2 (MSB)
68	L-	Common reference pole	
69	A2	Input A2	bit 0 (LSB)
70	B2	Input B2	bit 1
71	Z2	Input Z2	bit 2 (MSB)
72	L-	Common reference pole	

1753-IB16 Terminal Connections and Other Considerations

The 1753-IB16 input module features 16 digital inputs and 4 pulse test sources.

Since the 1753-IB16 is the only module/controller without digital outputs, it is equipped with four pulse test sources that can be software-configured for pulse testing of safety inputs, if required. Due to minimal current capacity, these pulse test sources cannot be used as outputs if they are not configured as pulse test sources.

For information on configuring pulse test sources for line control, see Chapter 16.

Pulse Test Sources

PO	P	PUL	SE	ΤE	ST	
L-	1	2	3	4	L-	
05	Ö	O o	0 0	Ő		
25	26	27	28	29	30	
25	26	27	28	29	30	

Terminal Number	Designation	Function
25	L-	Reference pole
26	1	Pulse test source 1
27	2	Pulse test source 2
28	3	Pulse test source 3
29	4	Pulse test source 4
30	L-	Reference pole

Safety-Related Digital Inputs



Digital inputs are connected to the following terminals:

Terminal Number	Designation	Function
1	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 1 to 4
2	1	Digital input 1
3	2	Digital input 2
4	3	Digital input 3
5	4	Digital input 4
6	L-	Reference pole
7	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 5 to 8
8	5	Digital input 5
9	6	Digital input 6
10	7	Digital input 7
11	8	Digital input 8
12	L-	Reference pole
13	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 9 to 12
14	9	Digital input 9
15	10	Digital input 10
16	11	Digital input 11
17	12	Digital input 12
18	L-	Reference pole
19	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 13 to 16
20	13	Digital input 13
21	14	Digital input 14
22	15	Digital input 15
23	16	Digital input 16
24	L-	Reference pole

1753-OB16 Terminal Connections and Other Considerations

Operating Voltage Considerations

The 1753-OB16 is the only module/controller that has a total current capacity (16A) higher than the terminal block current limitation (10A). Therefore, it features two separate operating voltage supply connections. Each group of 8 outputs has a current capacity of 8A, and is powered by a separate voltage supply. Output groups are comprised of the following:



The module has 16 digital outputs (DO1 to DO16) whose status is indicated via LEDs.



Each output is rated for up to 1A at 60° C (140°F) or 2A at 40°C (104°F). However, each group of 8 outputs may not exceed 8A total. For heat dissipation, intersperse high-current and low-current outputs so that all the high-current outputs are not next to each other.

Terminal Number	Designation	Function
1	L-	Reference pole
2	1	Digital output DO 1
3	2	Digital output DO 2
4	3	Digital output DO 3
5	4	Digital output DO 4
6	L-	Reference pole
7	L-	Reference pole
8	5	Digital output DO 5
9	6	Digital output DO 6
10	7	Digital output DO 7
11	8	Digital output DO 8
12	L-	Reference pole
13	L-	Reference pole
14	9	Digital output DO 9
15	10	Digital output DO 10
16	11	Digital output DO 11
17	12	Digital output DO 12
18	L-	Reference pole
19	L-	Reference pole
20	13	Digital output DO 13
21	14	Digital output DO 14
22	15	Digital output DO 15
23	16	Digital output DO 16
24	L-	Reference pole

The digital outputs are connected to the following terminals:

1753-IB20XOB8 Terminal Connections and Other Considerations

The remote I/O module features 20 digital inputs and 8 digital outputs whose status is indicate via LEDs.

Safety-Related Digital Inputs



The digital inputs are connected to the following terminals:

Terminal Number	Designation	Function
13	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 1 to 4
14	1	Digital input 1
15	2	Digital input 2
16	3	Digital input 3
17	4	Digital input 4
18	L-	Reference pole
19	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 5 to 8
20	5	Digital input 5
21	6	Digital input 6
22	7	Digital input 7
23	8	Digital input 8
24	L-	Reference pole
25	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 9 to 12
26	9	Digital input 9
27	10	Digital input 10
28	11	Digital input 11
29	12	Digital input 12
30	L-	Reference pole
31	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 13 to 16
32	13	Digital input 13
33	14	Digital input 14
34	15	Digital input 15
35	16	Digital input 16
36	L-	Reference pole
37	LS+	Sensor supply for inputs 17 to 20
38	17	Digital input 17
39	18	Digital input 18
40	19	Digital input 19
41	20	Digital input 20
42	L-	Reference pole

Safety-Related Digital Outputs

The module has 8 digital outputs (DO1 to DO8) whose status is indicated via LEDs.



The digital outputs are connected to the following terminals:

Terminal Number	Designation	Function	Current
1	L-	Reference pole	
2	1	Digital output 1	0.5 A
3	2	Digital output 2	0.5 A
4	3	Digital output 3	0.5 A
5	4	Digital output 4 (for increased load)	2.0 A
6	L-	Reference pole	—
7	L-	Reference pole	_
8	5	Digital output 5	0.5 A
9	6	Digital output 6	0.5 A
10	7	Digital output 7	0.5 A
11	8	Digital output 8 (for increased load)	2.0 A
12	L-	Reference pole	

GuardPLC 1200 Terminal Connections and Other Considerations

The GuardPLC 1200 has no LS+ terminal for a safety input voltage source. Use the L+ supply terminal as the source for safety input voltage. The four reference terminals, labeled I-, should be used for the safety input voltage reference. This is a common reference for all 20 inputs.

Lower Terminal Block



Terminal Number	Designation	Function
1	Not Used	None
2	11	Digital input 1
3	12	Digital input 2
4	13	Digital input 3
5	14	Digital input 4
6	15	Digital input 5
7	16	Digital input 6
8	17	Digital input 7
9	18	Digital input 8
10	19	Digital input 9
11	110	Digital input 10
12	111	Digital input 11
13	112	Digital input 12
14	113	Digital input 13
15	114	Digital input 14
16	115	Digital input 15
17	116	Digital input 16
18	117	Digital input 17
19	118	Digital input 18
20	119	Digital input 19
21	120	Digital input 20
22	-	Reference pole
23	-	Reference pole
24	-	Reference pole
25	-	Reference pole

All eight of the digital output zero-voltage reference terminals are common. Unlike the GuardPLC 1600/1800 or distributed I/O, which have an earth ground screw, the GuardPLC 1200 earth ground should be wired to the PA terminal.

Upper Terminal Block



Terminal Number	Designation	Function
1	L-	24V dc return path
2	L+	24V dc power input
3	L-	24V dc return path
4	L+	24V dc power input
5	PA	Functional ground
6	01+	Digital output 1
7	01-	Voltage reference for digital output 1
8	02+	Digital output 2
9	02-	Voltage reference for digital output 2
10	03+	Digital output 3
11	03-	Voltage reference for digital output 3
12	04+	Digital output 4
13	04-	Voltage reference for digital output 4
14	05+	Digital output 5
15	05-	Voltage reference for digital output 5
16	06+	Digital output 6
17	06-	Voltage reference for digital output 6
18	07+	Digital output 7
19	07-	Voltage reference for digital output 7
20	08+	Digital output 8
21	08-	Voltage reference for digital output 8
22	A1	Universal signal input for counter 1
23	A2	Universal signal input for counter 2
24	B1	Signal input for counting direction for counter 1
25	B2	Signal input for counting direction for counter 2
26	Z1	Reset for counter 1
27	Z2	Reset for counter 2
28	-	Signal ground for counters 1 and 2
29	-	Signal ground for counters 1 and 2

GuardPLC 2000 Terminal Connections and Other Considerations

1755-IB24X0B16 Digital I/O Module

This module is a combination I/O module featuring 24 safety-related digital inputs and 16 safety-related digital outputs.

- **Inputs:** The sockets with pins 2 through 9, 11 through 18, and 20 through 27 provide the 24 digital inputs I1 to I24. Pins 1, 10, and 19 are the common positive poles (LS+). Each group of 8 inputs has current limits of 100mA.
- **Outputs:** The sockets with pins 29 through 36 and 38 through 45 provide the 16 digital outputs O1 to O16. Pins 28 and 37 are the common negative poles (L-) for the output loads.
- Each output channel can be loaded with 2A, but the total load of all 16 outputs must not exceed 8A.

Ø	Ø	Terminal Number	Designation	Function	Terminal Number	Designation	Function
IB24 RUN	XOB16	1	LS+	Digital input supply for inputs 1 to 8	24	121	Digital input 21
	LS+ OI1	2	11	Digital input 1	25	122	Digital input 22
3 4	0 12 0 13	3	12	Digital input 2	26	123	Digital input 23
5 6	0 14 0 15	4	13	Digital input 3	27	124	Digital input 24
7 8 9	0 16 0 17 0 18	5	14	Digital input 4	28	L-	Reference pole for outputs 1 to 8
10		6	15	Digital input 5	29	01	Digital output 1
11 12	019	7	16	Digital input 6	30	02	Digital output 2
13 14 15	0112	8	17	Digital input 7	31	03	Digital output 3
15 16 17	0113	9	18	Digital input 8	32	04	Digital output 4
18 19	LS+	10	LS+	Digital input supply for inputs 9 to 16	33	05	Digital output 5
20 21	● 117 ● 118	11	19	Digital input 9	34	06	Digital output 6
22 23	● 119 ● 120	12	110	Digital input 10	35	07	Digital output 7
24 25	O 21 O 22	13	111	Digital input 11	36	08	Digital output 8
26 27	0 123	14	112	Digital input 12	37	L-	Reference pole for outputs 9 to 16
28 29	L- ●01	15	113	Digital input 13	38	09	Digital output 9
30 31	0 02 0 03	16	114	Digital input 14	39	010	Digital output 10
32 33	004 005	17	l15	Digital input 15	40	011	Digital output 11
34 35	006 007	18	116	Digital input 16	41	012	Digital output 12
36 37		19	LS+	Digital input supply for inputs 17 to 24	42	013	Digital output 13
39 40	0010 0011	20	117	Digital input 17	43	014	Digital output 14
41 42	0012 0013	21	118	Digital input 18	44	015	Digital output 15
43 44	0014 0015	22	119	Digital input 19	45	016	Digital output 16
45	0016	23	120	Digital input 20		•	

1755-IF8 Analog Input Module

This module features 8 single-ended analog inputs or 4 differential analog inputs. Two-wire or four-wire transmitters can be used. The devices cannot be powered from the GuardPLC module. An external power supply is required for all analog transmitters. Single-ended transmitters connect between the I*x* and I- terminals. For example: pins 1 and 2, 3 and 4, 5 and 6. Differential transmitters connect between I*x* and *x*- terminals. For example: pins 1 and 10, 3 and 12, 5 and 14.

IMPORTANT	Unused channels must be short-circuited. See page 3-12.
	<i>o</i>

All reference poles (I-) are internally connected.

Terminal Number	Designation	Function
1	1+	Analog input 1
2	-	Reference pole for input 1
3	12+	Analog input 2
4	-	Reference pole for input 2
5	13+	Analog input 3
6	-	Reference pole for input 3
7	14+	Analog input 4
8	-	Reference pole for input 4
9	shield connection	signal ground
10	15+/1-	Analog input 5
11	-	Reference pole for input 5
12	16/2-	Analog input 6
13	-	Reference pole for input 6
14	17+/3-	Analog input 7
15	I- Reference pole for inpu	
16	18+/4-	Analog input 8
17	I- Reference pole for input 8	
18	shield connection signal ground	

1755-OF8 Analog Output Module

This module features 8 analog outputs. Devices cannot be powered from the 1755-OF8 module. An external power supply is required for all analog output devices.

IF8 RUN ERR			
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		1+ - 2+ - 3+ - 4+ - ↓	
10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18		5+/1- - 6+/2- - 7+/3- - 8+/4- - ↓-	

00

There are 4 reference poles for the 8 outputs. A pair of outputs share a reference pole as shown below.

These outputs:	Share these Reference Poles:
1 and 2	01- and 02-
3 and 4	03- and 04-
5 and 6	05- and 06-
7 and 8	07- and 08-

Each group of 2 outputs is electrically isolated from the others.

IMPORTANT If an unused channel is defined as a current output (software configuration set to "current output"), the output channel has to be short-circuited. Place jumpers into these outputs and tighten the screws.

IMPORTANT

If an unused channel is defined as a voltage output (software configuration set to "voltage output"), the unused outputs must be left open. Short-circuiting a unused voltage output may cause damage to the output.

Terminal Number	Designation	Function
1	01+	Analog output 1
2	01-	Group 1 reference pole
3	02+	Analog output 2
4	02-	Group 1 reference pole
5	03+	Analog output 3
6	03-	Group 2 reference pole
7	04+	Analog output 4
8	04-	Group 2 reference pole
9	shield connection	signal ground
10	05+	Analog output 5
11	05-	Group 3 reference pole
12	06+	Analog output 6
13	06-	Group 3 reference pole
14	07+	Analog output 7
15	07-	Group 4 reference pole
16	08+	Analog output 8
17	08-	Group 4 reference pole
18	shield connection	signal ground



1755-HSC Counter Modules

This module contains 2 high speed counters and 4 digital outputs. Although the 4 digital outputs are located on the 1755-HSC module, they cannot be driven by counter presets. The 4 digital outputs are driven by software, just as on the 1755-IB24XOB16 module.

The nominal current per output is limited to $\leq 0.5A$. Currents > 0.5A are regarded as overload. The overload is limited to $\leq 11A$ per output, or $\leq 2A$ if all four outputs are overloaded at the same time. With an overload of 2A, the output voltage drops to 18V.

All counter common reference poles, C-, share the same path. All digital output common reference poles, L-, share the same path, but are electrically isolated from the C- pins.

Terminal Number	Designation	Function
1	C-	Common reference pole
2	A1	Signal input for counter 1
3	B1	Counting direction input for counter 1
4	Z1	Reset input for counter 1
5	C1	no function
6	C-	Common reference pole
7	C-	Common reference pole
8	C-	Common reference pole
9	C-	Common reference pole
10	C-	Common reference pole
11	A2	Signal input for counter 2
12	B2	Counting direction input for counter 2
13	Z2	Reset input for counter 2
14	C2	no function
15	C-	Common reference pole
16	C-	Common reference pole
17	C-	Common reference pole
18	C-	Common reference pole
19	L-	Reference pole for digital outputs
20	1	Digital output 1
21	2	Digital output 2
22	3	Digital output 3
23	4	Digital output 4
24	L-	Reference pole for digital outputs
25	L-	Reference pole for digital outputs
26	L-	Reference pole for digital outputs
27	L-	Reference pole for digital outputs



Grounding

You must provide an acceptable grounding path for each device in your application. For more information on proper grounding guidelines, refer to the *Industrial Automation Wiring and Grounding Guidelines*, publication number 1770-4.1.

Grounding Considerations for All Controllers

- To improve EMC conditions, ground the controller.
- Run the ground connection from the ground screw of the controller to a good earth ground. Use a minimum of 2.5 mm² (14 AWG) wire.
- Keep the connection to earth ground as short as possible to minimize resistance.
- Grounding is required even if the control system does not have shielded cables.
- If shielded cables are used to connect the controller to the external 24V dc source, connect the shield to the grounding contact of the power supply.
- No protective grounding (against hazardous shock) is required.

GuardPLC 1200

Ground the GuardPLC 1200 by connecting the PA terminal to earth ground. See page 3-27 for GuardPLC 1200 terminal connections.

GuardPLC 1600 and GuardPLC 1800 Controllers and Distributed I/O

The controllers and I/O have a grounding screw located on the upper left of the housing and marked with the grounding symbol . This grounding screw is common to the DIN rail connection. Attach an appropriate earth ground to the grounding screw.
GuardPLC 2000

Ground the GuardPLC 2000 chassis and cables using the grounding screw located on the left side of the grounding grill. Ground the chassis via the grounding grill.



Preventing Electrostatic Discharge

ATTENTION



Electrostatic discharge can damage integrated circuits or semiconductors. Follow these guidelines when you handle the module:

- Touch a grounded object to discharge static potential.
- Wear an approved wrist-strap grounding device.
- If available, use a static-safe workstation.
- When not in use, keep the GuardPLC controller in its static-shield box.

Connecting to the GuardPLC Controller

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
connecting to the controller via RSLogix Guard PLUS	4-1
going online with the GuardPLC controller	4-5
configuring the programming terminal	4-19
login dialog	4-20
determining the IP address and SRS of the controller	4-21
changing the SRS of the controller	4-22
changing the IP address of the controller	4-22

Connecting to the Controller via RSLogix Guard PLUS

You connect the controller to the programming terminal via an Ethernet port on the controller. The programming terminal must have an Ethernet port or Ethernet communication card.

To directly connect the programming terminal to the controller, use a cross-over Ethernet cable. The GuardPLC 1600 and 1800 feature auto-sensing ports so that a cross-over or straight-thru cable may be used.

Connecting to a GuardPLC 1200 Controller



Connecting to a GuardPLC 1600 or 1800 Controller



Connecting to a GuardPLC 2000 Controller



GuardPLC Factory Defaults

IP Address	192.168.0.99
Subnet Mask	255.255.252.0
SRS ⁽¹⁾	60000

(1) The SRS code is compiled with the program. It guarantees that the program can only be downloaded to a GuardPLC with a matching SRS stored in non-volatile memory.

Understanding Ethernet Addressing

As with any connection between devices on Ethernet, the IP address and subnet mask determine if the connection can take place. Every device on Ethernet has an IP address and subnet mask.

The IP address and subnet mask are made up of four (4) octets (001.002.003.004) The IP address is made up of the Network ID (octets 001 and 002) and the Host ID (octets 003 and 004). The Network ID portion of the IP address is derived from the subnet mask.

When any two devices attempt to talk on Ethernet, a check is made to see if the Network ID of both the originator and the destination address match. If they match, then the message is sent on the local network. If they do not match, then the message is sent to the Gateway to route the message to the destination. The subnet masks of all the devices on a local network should be the same.

The example below illustrates how to derive the Network ID based on the GuardPLC IP address and subnet mask defaults.

EXAMPLE Determining the Network ID

GuardPLC Defaults:	
IP Address 192.168.0.99	= 11000000 . 10101000 . 00000000 . 01100011
Subnet Mask 255.255.252.0	= 11111111 . 11111111 . 11111100 . 00000000
Network ID	= 11000000 . 10101000 . 000000xx . xxxxxxx

Set up the programming terminal's IP address so that it has the same Network ID as the GuardPLC. Octets one and two have to be the same because the subnet mask octets are 255. The third subnet mask octet is 252, which means that only the last two bits can be different.

If the factory default settings above are used, the allowable IP addresses for the programming terminal running RSLogix Guard PLUS are:

- 192.168.0.xxx (xxx represents any value between 000-255)
- 192.168.1.xxx
- 192.168.2.xxx
- 192.168.3.xxx

Configure the IP Address of Your Programming Terminal

IMPORTANT	The first time you connect to a controller, you must
	use the factory-set IP address of 192.168.0.99 and the
	default SRS of 60000. After you establish
	communications with the controller (using the steps
	on the following pages), you can change the IP
	address and SRS to better accommodate your
	Ethernet network.

Change the IP address of your programming terminal running RSLogix Guard PLUS so that the GuardPLC and programming terminal can communicate on a local network.

TIP

If you suspect the GuardPLC has the factory-set default IP address of 192.168.0.99 and the default subnet mask of 255.255.252.0, set your programming terminal's IP address to 192.168.0.98 with a subnet of 255.255.252.0 to establish communications.

Change the IP address (via Windows 2000) by selecting *Start* \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Control Panel* \rightarrow *Network and Dial-up Connections*. Open *Local Area Connections* and select *Properties*. Select *TCPIP* and *Properties*. Set the *General TCP/IP Properties* as shown below.

Local Area Connection Status	<u>? × </u>		
General			
Connection Status:	Local Area Connection Properties	<u>?</u> ×	
Duration: Speed:	Connect using: Image:	Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties	<u>? ×</u>
Activity Sent Image: Sent inclusion inclusi	Components checked are used by this connection: Cgmponents checked are used by this connection: Cgmponents checked are used by t	You can get IP settings assigned automatically if your network support this capability. Otherwise, you need to ask your network administrator I the appropriate IP settings. © Obtain an IP address automatically © Uge the following IP address: IP address: I32.168.0.98	s
	Install Uninstall Properties Description Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. The default wide area network protocol that provides communication across diverse interconnected networks.	Subnet mask: 255.255.200 Default gateway:	
	Show icon in taskbar when connected	Preferred DNS server:	
		OK Ca	ncel

Confirm your settings by clicking OK in both dialog boxes.

Going Online with the GuardPLC Controller

The following flowchart illustrates the steps required to successfully go online with the GuardPLC controller.



The steps are described in detail below.

Step 1: Open RSLogix Guard PLUS

💮 RSLogix Guard PL	US Project Management				_ 🗆 🗵
Project Object Edit	<u>W</u> indow <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp				
🗅 🗃 🛸 🖻			š 🛍 🔀		
POU TYPE					
PROJ					
	Error-state viewer				
	Date/Time A	Level	Text		
			L		
1					
J		Page name:		Page no.: P	os.:

Select *Start* \rightarrow *Programs* \rightarrow *RSLogix Guard PLUS* \rightarrow *RSLogixGuardPLUS*.

Step 2: Create a New Project

Open an existing project or create a new project that contains a GuardPLC controller.

- **1.** To create a new project, select $Project \rightarrow New$ from the main menu or click on the *New* icon.
- 2. Enter the name of the project in the *Object Name* field.



3. Click OK.

The RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Management window opens. Both the Project Management and Hardware Management windows are normally open when running RSLogix Guard PLUS.



Step 3: Configure the Controller Type and SRS

To go online, you must specify the controller type and change the default SRS. The software defaults to an SRS of zero (0), which is the only illegal SRS value. To accept the controller type, the SRS must be changed to a value between $2^{(1)}$ and 65535.

1. Expand the project tree in the Hardware Management window until [0] Resource is visible.



2. Right-click on [0] Resource and select Properties.

⁽¹⁾ The programming terminal defaults to 1.

3. Specify the controller type and enter an SRS of 60000. You must use the default SRS of 60000 the first time you connect to a GuardPLC controller.

- 🎦 OnlineLab	Configuration/Res	ource	- IX	
⊡- ∠ Configuration ↓ 0 Resource	Туре	GuardPLC 1800	-	
	Name	Resource		
	System ID [SRS]	60000		
	Safety Time [ms]	100		
	Watchdog Time [ms]	50		
	Main Enable	, 		
	Autostart	Г		
	Start/Restart allowed	V		
	Loading allowed	V		
	Test Mode allowed	Γ		
	Online Test allowed			
	Forcing allowed			
	Stop on Force Timeout			
	max. Com. Time Slice [ms] 10		
	Code Generation Version	3	÷	
		ncel <u>Apply</u>	Help	

4. Click *OK*. The Hardware Management window should appear as shown below. Notice that the SRS has changed to 60000.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Management	\mathbf{X}
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help	
Configuration Config	
03/26/2004 08:23:28:295, Info: oemsettings.dll, Version: 4.0.26 RSLogix Guard PLUS 03/26/2004 08:23:29.807, Info: Set Logging to directory 'C:\Program Files\RSLogix Guard PLUS\PROJECT\OnlineLab.L2P\c3log' for project 'C:\Program Files\RSLogix Guard PLUS\PROJECT\OnlineLab.L2P'.	•

Step 4: Communication Settings

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Management	
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help	
E-TonineLab E- ▲ Configuration E- ▲ 100000 Resource - E-Programming Terminal	Communication Settings [Resource] Image: Communication Settings Address PES using MAC Address 00 · e0 · a1 · i · · · · · Get
	Address PES using
	System Rack J 0 0 Get
	IP Address 192 . 168 . 0 . 99 Factory Settings
	Submet Mask 255 252 0 > Project Default Gateway 0 0 0 0 0 System.Rack 60000 0 0 0 0
	Set via MAC Set via IP Cancel Help
03/09/2004 19:31:28:594. Info: cemsettings.dll, Version: 4.0.2 03/08/2004 19:31:30.156. Info: Set Logging to directory 'C-VF Files/RSLogix Guard PLUSVPROJECT/OnlineLab.L2P'.	26 RSLogik Guard PLUS 26 RSLogik Guard PLUS Yogram Files/NSLogik Guard PLUS/PROJECT/OnlineLab.L2P/c3log' for project 'C:/Program

 Select Online → Communication Settings from the pull-down menu.

2. The MAC address is on the sticker on the side of a GuardPLC 1200 controller, on the label positioned over both lower RJ-45 connections on GuardPLC 1600/1800 controllers and I/O, or on the front bezel of the AB-CPU module of a GuardPLC 2000 controller. Enter the last three elements of the MAC address into the *MAC Address* field and click on *Get*. The IP address and SRS of the GuardPLC should appear in the *Address PES using...* fields.

oject Edit Signals Online Windows Help		
Te OnlineLab	Communication Settings [Resource]	
	Address PES using MAC Address 00 + e0 + a1 + 00 + 1e + 02	Get
	Address PES using	
	System.Rack 60000 0	Get
	Communication Settings IP Address 192 . 168 . 0 . 94 Subnet Mask 255 . 255 . 252 . 0 Default Gateway 0 . 0 . 0 . 0 System Rack 60000	Factory Settings
	Set via IP Cancel	Help
08/2004 19:31:28.584, Info: cemsettings.dll, Version: 4.0.2 08/2004 19:31:30.156, Info: Set Logging to directory 'C:\Pr	 6 RSLogix Guard PLUS ogram Files\RSLogix Guard PLUS\PR0JECT\OnlineLab.L2P\c3log' fr	or project 'C:\Program

Step 5: Change Settings via MAC Address

1. Enter desired settings for the IP and SRS in the Communication Settings fields indicated by the arrows below.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Manage	ement	_ _ ×
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help		
Teringuration Configuration Configuration Distributed I/0 Process TypeInstance TypeInstance	Communication Settings [Resource] Image: Communication Settings [Resource] <tht< td=""><td></td></tht<>	
	Communication Settings Factory Settings IP Address 132 . 168 . 0 . 100 Factory Settings Subnet Mask 255 . 252 . 0	
03/25/2004 15:11:15:331, Into: help.dl. Version. 03/25/2004 15:11:15:401, Into: trisuals.dl. Ver 03/25/2004 15:11:15:401, Into: dispets.dl. Ver 03/25/2004 15:11:15:401, Into: censettings.dl, 03/25/2004 15:11:16:854, Into: Set Logging to a	. 4 0.26 RSLogix Guard PLUS English sin 4 0.26 RSLogix Guard PLUS sin 4 0.26 RSLogix Guard PLUS Version: 4 0.26 RSLogix Guard PLUS Steoloy C: Nogaan Files VRSLogix Guard PLUS VPROJECT\OnlineLab.L2P\c3log' for projec	▲ ↓

- **2.** Click on the *Set via MAC* button.
- **3.** The Authentication window appears. Enter the default username "Administrator" as shown below.

Authentication	×
User name	Administrator
Password	
	CancelHelp

4. Click OK.

The IP address and SRS should have changed. If successful, a prompt appears at the bottom of the window and the settings in the middle fields change.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Manag	ement	
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help		
Configuration Configu	Communication Settings [Resource] ▲ Address PES using MAC Address 00 · e0 · a1 · 00 · 1e · 02 Get Address PES using IP Address 192 · 168 · 0 · 100 Get IP Address 192 · 168 · 0 · 100 Get System.Rack 100 0 Get Communication Settings IP Address 192 · 168 · 0 · 100 Get Subnet Mask 255 · 255 · 252 · 0 > Project > Project Default Gateway 0 · 0 · 0 · 0 0 > Project Set via MAC Set via IP Cancel Help	
03/25/2004 15:11:16.854, Info: Set Logging to C:VFrogram Files/R5Logix Guard PLUS/VFROJE 03/25/2004 15:47:17.527, Info: Processing con 03/25/2004 15:47:18.629, Info: Communication	directory CV-Program Files/RSLogix Guard PLUS/PROJECT/OnlineLab.L2P/c3log' for project CT/OnlineLab.L2P, mmand. Please wait settings successfully changed.	×

Step 6: Move the Settings Into Your Offline Project

If you wish to connect using the current GuardPLC settings, move the settings into your offline project.

1. Left-click on "-> Project".

T= OnlineLab	Communication Settings [Resource]	
Configuration	Address PES using MAC Address 00 + e0 + a1 + 00 + 1e + 02	Get
	Address PES using IP Address 192 . 168 . 0 . 99 System Rack 60000 0	Get
	Communication Settings Fact IP Address 192 168 0 94 Fact Subnet Mask 255 255 252 0 > 0	ry Settings
	Set via MAC Set via IP Cancel	Help

2. The Resource Selection window appears. Make sure *Resource* is selected and click *OK*.

Resource Selec	tion	X
È-OnlineLab		
Resource		
1		
ΟΚ	Cancel	Help

3. Answer *YES* to the warning prompt.

🔋 Warr	ning		×
⚠	Write network This will overwi	settings to project? rite the current settin	ıgs.
	Yes	No	

This moves the IP address and SRS of the GuardPLC to your offline project and overwrites the existing values. These new values will be used in the login screen to connect with the GuardPLC.

Step 7: Use the Control Panel to Connect to the GuardPLC

- 1. Right-click on [60000] Resource.
- **2.** Select *Online* \rightarrow *Control Panel*.
- **3.** The Login Window appears. Type [Ctrl]+[A] to fill in the default *Username, Password,* and *Access Type.*

Login	×
COM IF	le0 💌
IP Address	192 . 168 . 0 . 99
System.Rack	2 0
User name	Administrator
Password	
Access type	Administrator
(OK Cancel Help

4. Click OK.

The Control Panel Online indicator will be GREEN if the controller is in RUN Mode. The Online indicator may also be yellow, white, or red based on its current state.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Management	<u>]_</u>			
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help				
🗄 🚏 📴 OnlineLab	🚅 Control Panel [Resource]	×		
🗄 - 📕 Configuration	PADT Resource Communication Test Mode Extra Help			
😟 - 🔀 [60000] Resource	<i>₽ 1</i> 2 → ■ <u>=</u> →			
	Resource State Safety Parameters Statistics P2P State Distributed I/O HH State E -			
	CPU State RUN CDM State RUN Program Name TypeInstance Program State RUN Faulty I/O Modules 0 Force State Forcing disabled Remaining Force Time [s] 0			
	F I/O Online Administrator			
<u></u>				
03/08/2004 19:59:59.584, Info: [Resource] Settings were wri	ten to the project	-		
03/08/2004 20:02:07.166, Info: [Resource] Uffline. 03/08/2004 20:03:10.829, Info: [Resource] Resource grants	administrator access for user 'Administrator'.	_		
1		-		

TIP

If you are successfully online with the GuardPLC and in RUN mode (Green Online indicator as shown above), you do not need to continue with the steps 8 through 12 below. However, if you are not online and in RUN mode, consult the flowchart on page 4-5, and perform the appropriate steps.

Step 8: Change the Controller to STOP Mode

To change the controller to STOP mode, select *Resource* \rightarrow *Stop* from the Control Panel or use the *Stop* icon.

When in STOP Mode, the Control Panel appears as follows:

📑 RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Manag	jement		<u>_ 0 ×</u>
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help			
Configuration Configu	Control Panel [Resource PADT Resource Communia Communia PADT Image: State Resource State Safety I	rce] cation Test Mode Extra Help 1) Parameters Statistics P2P Sta	te Distributed I/O HH / •
	CHO State COM State Program Name Program State Pauly I/O Modules Force State Remaining Force Time (c)	STOP / VALID CONFIGURATION TypeInstance STOP 0 Forcing disabled 0	
		_	F I/O Online Administrator
03/25/2004 15:47:18.629, Info: Communication 03/25/2004 16:10:09.192, Info: Processing co 03/25/2004 16:10:10.414, Info: Communication 03/25/2004 16:10:20.490, Info: [Resource] R	n settings successfully changed mmand. Please wait n settings successfully changed esource grants administrator ad	d. d. ccess for user 'Administrator'.	1 1

Close the Control Panel.

Step 9: Reset the Controller to the Default Settings

In some cases, you may have to reset the GuardPLC to its default IP address and SRS.

GuardPLC 1600 and 1800 controllers have a Reset button that is accessible via a small hole directly to the right of the Ethernet ports on top of the controller. The Reset button returns the IP address, SRS and Password settings to:

IP Address	192.168.0.99
SRS	60000
Username	Administrator
Password	[none]

To reset the controller, hold down the RESET button, then power cycle the GuardPLC. Continue to hold down the Reset button until the PROG led stops flashing.

At the next power cycle, the settings will revert back to the last configured settings. These could be the settings in place prior to the Reset operation, if you did not reconfigure them after resetting the controller.

Step 10: Ping the Controller

Use the Start menu to open the RSLogix Guard PLUS Command Prompt by selecting *Start* \rightarrow *Programs* \rightarrow *RSLogix Guard PLUS* \rightarrow *RSLogix Guard PLUS Command Prompt*.

Run IPCONFIG at the DOS Command prompt to verify your computer's IP address. It must be on the same local network as the GuardPLC.



Ping the GuardPLC using the command shown at the C:\> below. If the ping is successful, the IP address of the GuardPLC has been verified and the Ethernet link is operating. If the ping was not successful either the IP address, subnet mask, or Ethernet link is not correct. The picture below is the result of a successful ping.



Type "exit" at the command prompt to close the Command Prompt window.

Step 11: Configure the GuardPLC Controller's IP Address

1. Expand the project tree in the Hardware Management window until the controller *COM* icon is visible.



- 2. Right-click on COM and select Properties.
- **3.** Edit the IP address to match the GuardPLC controller and click *OK*.

🚹 RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Manag	ement	<u> </u>
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help		
E- Configuration	Configuration/Resource/GuardPLC 1800/COM	
E- K [60000] Resource	Type COM	
🗀 Distributed 1/0	IP Address 192 . 168 . 0 . 99	
Protocols	Subnet Mask 255 . 255 . 252 . 0	
E- [0] GuardPLC 1800	Default Gateway 0 . 0 . 0 . 0	
-0 CPU -0 CPU -0 CPU -0 (1) D0 8 -0 (2) HSC 2 -0 (3) MI 24/8 FS1000 -0 Programming Terminal	IP Device 0 QK <u>Cancel Apply Help</u>	
O3/25/2004 16:10:10.414, Info: Communication 03/25/2004 16:10:10.414, Info: Communication 03/25/2004 16:10:20.400, Info: [Resource] 01 03/25/2004 16:30.53.312, Info: [Resource] 01	setting: - isoco-real; setting: successfully changed. socuce grants administrator access for user 'Administrator'. •] Connection lost. fine.	

Step 12: Recovering from a Controller Fault After Using the RESET Button

After using the Reset button, the Control Panel will appear as follows if the SRS was not originally 60000 prior to the Reset. The Fault LED on the front of the GuardPLC is illuminated, and the CPU State of the Resource is STOP/INVALID CONFIGURATION.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Mana	jement				- 🗆 🗵
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help					
🗄 📲 OnlineLab	🕼 Control Panel [Resour	rce]			
🖃 🔟 Configuration	PADT Resource Communic	ation Test Mode Extra Help			
⊡- ≥ [60000] Resource	🔊 🕫 🕨 🔳 🗾	1)			
Distributed I/U Protocols	Resource State Safety F	Parameters Statistics P2P Sta	ate Distributed I/O HH State	Environ ()	
	,	· · · · ·			
[] GuardPLC 1800					
🖥 СОМ					
CPU					
[]→[1]D0 8	CPU State	STOP / INVALID CONFIGURATIO	IN		
- [2] H5U 2 - [3] MI 24/8 ES1000	COM State	STOP / INVALID CONFIGURATIO	N		
Programming Terminal	Program Name	*** ??? ***			
l a · ·	Program State		_		
	Faulty I/O Modules	0	_		
	Porce State	Forcing disabled	-		
	Remaining Force Time [s]	U			
				Administration	
<u>+</u>			μο <mark>υπίπε</mark>	Administrator	
03/25/2004 16:45:12 232 Info: [Besource] E	esource grants administrator ac	cess for user 'Administrator'			
03/25/2004 16:45:14.015, Error: [Resource]	CPC-DIAG: Command >> statisti	c data of time sclices of communicat	tion << FAILED (error: 3008502)		
>>> TPb: Wrong SHS					-
·					_

To recover from this fault:

- **1.** Select *Extra* \rightarrow *Change System ID* from the Control Panel.
- **2.** Verify that 60000 appears in the first window with 0 in the second, as shown below.

i - Change System	ID [GPLC1600_1] X
System.Rack	E0001 0
<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

3. Click *OK*.

The Fault LED should turn off, and the Control Panel should show that the CPU State has changed to STOP/VALID CONFIGURATION, as shown below.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Mana	gement		
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help	0		
The OnlineLab Configuration Configuration Note that the online of th	PADT Resource Communi PADT Resource Communi PADT Panel Safety Resource State Safety	rce] cation Test Mode Extra Help 1) Parameters Statistics P2P Sta	te Distributed 1/0 HH
	CPU State COM State Program Name Program State Foulty I/O Modules Force State Remaining Force Time [s]	STOP / VALID CONFIGURATION STOP / VALID CONFIGURATION TypeInstance STOP 0 Forcing disabled 0	
03/25/2004 15 47:18 529. Info: Communicatio 03/25/2004 15:10:03 192. Info: Processing oc 03/25/2004 15:10:10:14.14. Info: Processing oc	n setting: successfully changer mmand. Please wai n cetting: successfull changer	1.	F 170 jonine Administrator
03/25/2004 16:10:20.490, Info: [Resource] F	Resource grants administrator a	 ccess for user 'Administrator'.	

TIP

The Online indicator is white because the GuardPLC is in STOP/VALID mode.

TIP

This is the end of the steps related to the flowchart on page 4-5.

Configuring the Programming Terminal

Specify Host SRS

From the Hardware Management window, you can specify the host SRS of the programming terminal.

- 1. Right-click on *Programming Terminal* and select *Properties*.
- 2. Enter the host SRS (1 to 65535) for the programming terminal.

RSLogix Guard PLUS F	lardware M	lanage	P		
Project Edit Signals Onlin	e <u>W</u> indows	Help			
🖻 - 🎦 example1			[
🖃 🔟 Configuration					
E 🔀 [2] Resource					
🗄 🧰 Distribute	ed 1/0				
- Protocol	3				
- I ypeinst	ance				
	IPEC 1600			📇/Programmin	ng Terminal 📃
HH-Network_1	New	►		Туре	Programming Terminal
	⊆ору			System ID	1
	P <u>a</u> ste			Timeout [ms]	2000
	Delete			ninecat [ine]	1 000
	Print			Hesend Time [ms]	1 1300
	Duamanhi			ок (Cancel Apply Help
	Properti	ies-			

Make sure the host SRS of the programming terminal is not identical to the system ID (SRS) of any other controllers or programming terminals.

In a network, as many as five programming terminals can connect to the same controller at the same time. However, only one programming terminal can have read/write access.

If another controller logs in with read access, that additional user can query controller states and parameters (RUN, STOP, controller switches, etc.) with the Control Panel. The additional user can also display data values if the programming terminal has the same configuration as the controller.

If there are multiple programming terminals in one network, each programming terminal must have a unique host SRS.

Login Dialog

The Login dialog defines the communication parameters between the controller and the programming terminal.

Field:	Description:	
IP address	the IP address of t	he controller on the Ethernet network.
	The factory-set IP	address is 192.168.0.99.
SRS	SRS stands for "S only need to enter be unique from the Ethernet.	ystem, R ack, S lot". The rack and slot IDs are already preset by the controller, so you the system ID. You can enter any number from 1 to 65,535. However, the number must e programming terminal and from any other GuardPLCs on the same Peer-to-Peer
	The default (factor	ry-set) SRS is 60000.
Username	your username.	
(default = Administrator)	The Administrator username can only You can define as	assigns a username. The username is sensitive to upper and lower case characters. A y contain letters, numbers, and underscore characters. many as 10 usernames per GuardPLC controller.
Password	your password.	
(default = <blank>)</blank>	An Administrator a letters, numbers, a	assigns a password. The password is case sensitive. A password can only contain and underscore characters.
Access Type	your access level.	
	Login as one of the	ese options:
	Administrator	highest privileges manage usernames and passwords read data from controller write routines and data into controller force tags stop, start, freeze, and force a routine download an operating system change IP address and system ID reboot the controller can also login under read/write and read levels
	Read/Write	read data from controller write routines and data into controller force tags start, stop, freeze, and force a routine can also login under read level
	Read	lowest privileges only read data from controller
	As many as five us users can login as while someone els access, regardless	sers can login to the same controller at the same time; however, only one of those Administrator or Read/Write. The others must login with READ access. If you login se is logged in with Administrator or Read/Write access, you automatically get READ s of the access type you select.
	For new controller access is available Username: Password Access Type	s, and if the backup battery was removed from a GuardPLC 1200 or 2000 controller, a using the following system defaults: Administrator <blank> Administrator</blank>

Determining the IP Address and SRS of the Controller

The default IP address of a new controller is 192.168.0.99. The default SRS of a new controller is 60000. To check the current IP address and SRS of a controller:

1. Select *Online* \rightarrow *Communication Settings.*



In the *MAC address* field, enter the MAC address of the controller. The MAC address is on the sticker on the side of a GuardPLC 1200 controller, on the label positioned over both lower RJ-45 connections on GuardPLC 1600/1800 controllers and I/O, or on the front bezel of the AB-CPU module of a GuardPLC 2000 controller.

MAC Address	00 · e0 · a1 · · ·	Get
Address PES using.		
IP Address	0.0.0.0	
System Rack Communication Sett	ings	Get
System.Rack Communication Sett IP Address Subnet Mask	0 0 ings 192 . 168 . 0 . 99 255 . 255 . 252 . 0	Get Factory Settin
System Rack Communication Sett IP Address Subnet Mask Default Gateway	0 0 inge 192 . 168 . 0 . 99 255 . 255 . 252 . 0 0 . 0 . 0 . 0	Get Factory Settin → Project

3. Click *Get*. The controller responds back with the IP address and the SRS it is currently using.



This function works if the IP address of the GuardPLC passes through the subnet mask of your computer.

Changing the SRS of the Controller

There are two ways to change the SRS of the controller:

TIP

TIP

1. From the Control Panel, select *Extra* \rightarrow *Change System ID* (SRS). Enter the SRS and click *OK*.



- **2.** Or follow "Step 4: Communication Settings" on page 4-9 and "Step 5: Change Settings via MAC Address" on page 4-10.
 - Typically, you change the SRS of the GuardPLC to match that of the controller/routine that you wish to download to it. Recall that the SRS is compiled into the executable and ensures that this .EXE can only be downloaded to a GuardPLC with a matching SRS.

Changing the IP Address of the Controller

After you establish communications with the controller, you can change the IP address of the controller to match your Ethernet network. There are two ways to change the IP address of the controller:

1. From the Control Panel, select *Extra* →*Device Settings*. Enter the new IP address and click *OK*.



2. Or follow "Step 4: Communication Settings" on page 4-9 and "Step 5: Change Settings via MAC Address" on page 4-10.

To re-establish communications with the "new" IP address and subnet of your GuardPLC, you may need to change the IP and subnet address of your programming terminal. Use the Network section of the Windows Control Panel to change the programming terminal's IP address and subnet mask.

Creating Your First GuardPLC Project

Using This Chapter

This chapter is a tutorial that guides you through the following basic steps required to create a project:

- 1. Start a new project.
- 2. Configure the project and hardware.
- **3.** Create signals and connect them to the I/O points.
- **4.** Create a Function Block program using the signals.
- **5.** Save, compile, test, and download the program to the GuardPLC.
- **6.** Monitor the project online.

Start a New Project

Start RSLogix Guard PLUS. Create a new project using the *New* icon or by selecting *Project* \rightarrow *New*. Enter "FirstProject" in the *Object Name* field as shown below and click *OK*.

and New Project	
C:\Program Files\RSLogix Guard PLUS\PROJECT\FirstProject	
BSLogix Gi Access API BIN C 3 C 3 C ygb19 DOC	
Object name: FirstProject	
	OK <u>C</u> ancel Help

The Hardware Management window opens. This window is used to configure the project, controller, I/O, and signals.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Management	
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help	
🖻 - 🏗 FirstProject	
🗄 🖌 🖌 Configuration	
03/08/2004 20:28:22.012, Info: cemsettings.dll, Version: 4.0.26 RSLogix Guard PLUS	_
PLUS\PROJECT\FirstProject.L2P\c3log' for project 'C\Program Files\RSLogix Guard PLUS\PROJECT\FirstProject.L2	2P'. 📕
	•

Return to the Project Management window and expand the project tree until it matches the example below.



When the project is expanded, you can see that it contains a *Configuration* and under the *Configuration* there is a *Resource*, which is the actual GuardPLC Controller. Under the *Resource* is the program *TypeInstance* that will run on the GuardPLC Controller.

Configure the Project and Hardware

1. In the Hardware Management window, expand the project tree so that the *Configuration*, *Resource*, and *TypeInstance* are visible, as shown below:



2. Right click on *[0] Resource* and select *Properties*. Edit the properties as shown below.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Mana	agement			<u> </u>
Project Edit Signals Online Windows He	lp			
🖻 🎦 FirstProject	Kernet Configuration/Res	ource	- D ×	
È ▲ Configuration È ▲ [0] Resource	Туре	GuardPLC 1800	•	
·····(= Programming Terminal	System ID (SRS)	In esource		
	Safety Time [ms]	100		
	Watchdog Time [ms]	50		
	Main Enable	V		
	Autostart			
	Start/Restart allowed			
	Loading allowed			
	Test Mode allowed			
	Online Test allowed			
	Forcing allowed			
	Stop on Force Timeout	V		
	max. Com. Time Slice [ms]] 10		
	Code Generation Version	3	*	
	<u>K</u> a	ncel <u>Apply</u>	Help	

The Resource Type should match the type of GuardPLC to which you want to connect. The SRS is a code that is compiled with the function block routine. The routine can be downloaded only to a GuardPLC with a matching SRS code stored in its non-volatile memory. For more information on configuring the controller, see page 8-5.

TIP

The default SRS of a new controller is 60000. You must use this SRS to initially establish communications with the controller. Once you have established communications, you can change the SRS.

3. Click *Apply* to move these values into the project.

4. Select the four (4) unchecked boxes and click OK.



You can rename the controller using the Program Management window. Expand the project tree and the *Configuration*. Right-click on *Resource* and select *Rename*.

5. Expand the *Resource* so that the Hardware Management project tree appears as shown below.



6. Right click on *COM* under *GuardPLC 1800*, and select *Properties*. The following window appears.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Management									<u>- </u>
<u>Project Edit Signals Online Windows H</u> elp									
FirstProject ✓ Configuration ✓ Configuration ✓ Configuration ✓ I (60000) Resource ✓ Protocols ✓ I TypeInstance ✓ OI GuardPLC 1800 ✓ COM ✓ CPU ↔ (1) D0 8 ↔ (2) HSC 2 ↔ (3) MI 24/8 FS1000 ✓ Forgramming Terminal	Configuration	00/Re	esour 1 192 255 0	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	iuardi 168 255 0	Apply	0 252 0	99 0 0 <u>1</u> <u>H</u> elp	

7. Enter the IP address of your GuardPLC. Neither the Subnet Mask nor the Default Gateway should require changes. Click *OK*.



The GuardPLC controller's default IP address is 192.168.0.99.

Them to I/O Points

Create Signals and Connect Because the example in this chapter uses the GuardPLC 1800 controller, there are predefined I/O listed under the controller in the project tree. The 1200/1600/1800 are fixed controllers with pre-configured I/O. If you use a GuardPLC 2000, the I/O must be configured, since it is a modular controller.

> 1. Select Signals from the Hardware Management menu bar, and select Editor.



- 2. Create 3 new signals, START, STOP, and MOTOR:
 - a. Left-click on New Signal in the Signal Editor. Type START in the Name field and press the Enter key.
 - b. Left-click on New Signal again. Type STOP in the Name field and press the Enter key.
 - c. Left Click on New Signal again. Type MOTOR in the Name field and press the Enter key.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Management Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help					_	
Configuration Confi	Signal Editor Filter:* New Signal Delete Signal Name START START START STOP MOTOR	Help Peta Type Retain 800L 800L 800L 900L	1 Constant	Description	Init Value	
03/08/2004 20:28:22.012, Info: oemsettings.dll, Version: 4.0.26 03/08/2004 20:28:22.813, Info: Set Logging to directory 'C:\Pro Files\RSLogix Guard PLUS\PROJECT\FirstProject.L2P'.	s RŠLogix Guard PLUS ogram Files\RSLogix Guard PLUS\	PROJECT\FirstProje	ct.L2P\c3lo	g' for project 'C:	\Program	Á

3. Connect these three signals to physical I/O terminals. Right-click on the controller's I/O (*DI 20* for 1600 or *MI 24/8 FS1000* for 1800) and select *Connect Signals*.



TIP

Set up your screen so that you can easily drag signals from the Signal Editor window to the Signal Connections window. Both the *Name* fields in the Signal Editor and the *Signal* fields in the Signal Connections window must be visible, as shown above.

4. Verify that the *Inputs* tab is selected on the Signal Connections window.

Two signals exist for each input: Value and Error Code. The GuardPLC 1800 adds another signal called Value Analog.

Error Code is a status signal that can be used for point-level diagnostics. The Value contains the actual field state of the input: ON (1) or OFF (0).

- **5.** Connect the START and STOP signals to *DI*[17]. *Value* and *DI*[18]. *Value* by dragging START and STOP from the *Name* field in the Signal Editor to the *Signal* field in the Signal Connections window.
 - a. Make sure the cursor is not active in any field in either the Signal Editor or the Signal Connections window.
 - b. Left-click and hold on the *Name* field. Drag the signal to the *Signal* field in the Signal Connections window.

c. Release when over the proper field.



Signals can only be dragged and dropped onto *Signal* fields of the same data type. Dropping a BOOL signal onto a BYTE field is not permitted.

When both signals have been connected, the screens should appear as follows:

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Mana	agement			_ D ×
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Hel	lp			
	Signal Editor Filter:* New Signal Delete Signal Help Name Type Retain Constant Description Init Value Inputs Outputs	s [/Configuration/		
← ☐ Protocols → ① Protocols → ① puenstance () GuardPLC 1800 ← ① COM ← ① CPU ← ① (1) D0 8 ← ↓ (2) HSC 2 ← ↓ (2) HSC 2 ← ↓ (3) M1 24/8 FS100C ← ② Programming Terminal @ - ☐ Protocols	I MOTOR BOOL IName 2 START-#200L 53 TDI[T5]Enort 3 ST6P BOOL 66 DI[T6]Value 66 DI[T6]Value 66 DI[T7]EnorG 67 DI[16]Value 68 FUL2[Value 68 FUL2[Value 69 DI[18]Value 70 DI[18]Value 72 DI[18]Value 73 DI[19]Value 73 DI[19]Value	Type Sig BYTE BOOL Analog INT BOOL STA BOOL STA Analog INT BOOL STA Analog INT BOOL STC Analog INT ode BYTE BOOL BOOL	ART	
	74 D[[19]/Value / 75 D[[20]/Enor C 76 D[[20]/Value / 77 D[[20]/Value / 77 D[[20]/Value / Version: 4.0.26 RSLogis Guard PLUS Di[20]/Value / Version: 4.0.26 RSLogis Guard PLUS Di[20]/Value / dll, Version: 4.0.26 RSLogis Guard PLUS Hold PLUS dll, Version: 4.0.26 RSLogis Guard PLUS Differition	INT pde BYTE BOOL Analog INT		

- **6.** If your controller is a GuardPLC 1800, an additional step is required. The digital inputs on a GuardPLC 1800 are actually analog circuits with a resolution of one (1) bit. Any voltage greater than 13V dc will be a 1. Any voltage less than 7V dc will be a 0. Since GuardPLC analog circuits require the user to specify which channels are being used, this is also required for the 24 digital inputs on the GuardPLC 1800.
 - a. Add a new signal, called USED, to the Signal Editor. Give this signal an initial value of 1. You will never change this value in your program, so USED will always be 1.
 - b. Select the Outputs tab of MI 24/8 FS1000.
 - c. Connect USED to the DI channels being used: *DI*[17].Used, and *DI*[18].Used, as shown on the following page.

Project								The second	I.C. I.L. I.	c 0		H
Configuration	- Sign	al Editor I	iltow*		_	_		Signa	al Lonnections [,	Lonfigura	tion/[]_	비즈
- 🔀 [60000] Resource	JI Nami		licer.	(Liste				Help	(.			
🧰 Distributed I/O	I New :	ngnai Di	sete olyna	neip		D 14	1	Inputs	Outputs			
🧰 Protocols	1	MOTOR		Hetain	Lonstant	Description	Init Value	2.1	Name	Туре	Signal	⊢∸∥
···· 🎩 TypeInstance	2	START	BOOL	-				54	DI[16].Hysteresis H	IIGH INT		
🖻 - 🧱 [0] GuardPLC 1800	2	STOP	BOOL					55	DI[16].Hysteresis L	OW INT		
COM	4	USED -	RUUI	-			1	56	DI[16].Used	BOOL		
	4	0020						57	DI[17].Hysteresis H	IIGH INT		
								58	DI[17] Hysteresis L	OW INT		
						_		59	DI[17].Used	BO	USED	
Programming Terminal								60	DI[18].Hysteresis H	IIGH INT		
								61	DI[18].Hysteresis L			
								62	DI[18].Used	BOOL	USED	
								63	DI[19].Hysteresis H	IIGH INT		
								64	DI[19].Hysteresis L	OW INT		
								65	DI[19].Used	BOOL		
								66	DI[20].Hysteresis H	IIGH INT		
	1							67	DI[20].Hysteresis L	OW INT		
		_	_	-	_	_		68	DI[20].Used	BOOL		
								69	DI[21].Hysteresis H	IIGH INT		
								70	DI[21].Hysteresis L	OW INT		
								71	DI[21].Used	BOOL		
								72	DI[22].Hysteresis H	IIGH INT		
								73	DI[22].Hysteresis L	OW INT		
								74	DI[22].Used	BOOL		
								75	DI[23].Hysteresis H	IIGH INT		
								76	DI[23].Hysteresis L	OW INT		
								77	DI[23].Used	BOOL	-	
								78	DI[24].Hysteresis H	IIGH INT		
								79	DI[24].Hysteresis L	OW INT		
								80	DI[24].Used	BOOL		▼
► I												

- 7. Close the DI Signal Connections window.
- **8.** Right-click on *DO8* in the project tree and select *Connect Signals.*
- **9.** The Signal Connections window defaults to the *Inputs* tab. Select the *Outputs* tab to view the output fields.
- **10.** Connect the MOTOR signal to the first output, as shown below.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Man	agemen	:										
Project Edit Signals Online Windows He	elp											
🖻 🎦 FirstProject	🎽 Sign	al Editor F	ilter:*				-DX	💋 Sign	al Connection:	s [/Confi	gurati 💶 🗖 🗶	1
🖃 🔟 Configuration	New S	ignal 🛛 De	elete Signal	Help]] Help				
E- 🔀 [60000] Resource		Name	Туре	Retain	Constant	Description	Init Value	Inputs	Outputs			
Distributed I/U Distributed I/U	1	MOTOR	BOOL						Name	Туре	Signal	1
	2	START	BOOL					1	DO[01].Value	BOOI	MOTOR	
E P III GuardPI C 1800	3	STOP	BOOL					2	DO[02].Value	BOOL		
								3	D0[03].Value	BOOL		
- CPU								4	DO[04].Value	BOOL		
[]→ [1] DO 8								5	DO[05].Value	BOOL		
[2] HSC 2								6	DO[06].Value	BOOL		
								7	DO[07].Value	BOOL		
🦾 🤚 Programming Terminal								8	DO[08].Value	BOOL		
								<u> </u>				
										_	/	2

The signals have now been connected to physical I/O points.

Create a Function Block Program

The following example creates code to start and stop a motor using the two input signals we created earlier.

- **TIP** For more information on Function Block programming, consult the online Help and Chapter 17, "Creating User-Defined Function Blocks".
- **1.** Close the Signal Connections window. Leave the Signal Editor active, and restore the Project Management window.
- If necessary, expand the project tree in Project Management until [I] TypeInstance is visible and double left-click on [I] TypeInstance. A Function Block Editor program page opens.



1. Drag all three tags from the Signal Editor (in Hardware Management) to any location on the FB Editor program page.



To make the Signal Editor and the FB Editor fit comfortably on your screen, restore both the Project Management and Hardware Management windows. Then, select *Tile Windows Vertically* from the Windows task bar located on the bottom of your screen.

Whenever a page is edited for the first time, a window appears asking for a page name. You do not need to name the page. Click *OK* to close this dialog box.



2. Minimize the Hardware Management window.



You can delete the white areas under the signals, which are used for descriptions, by clicking on the white area and hitting the Delete key.

3. In the Project Management project tree, expand *StandardLibs*, *IEC61131-3*, and *Bistr* as shown below.



4. Drag an *AND* and an *OR* block onto the routine (Left-click, hold, drag and release).



5. Connect the blocks with lines by left-clicking and holding the very small dots on the edges of the boxes. Drag and release over the destination dot.

TIP

Use the *Zoom In* tool on the toolbar to zoom in to see the dots on the edge of the boxes.

- **6.** Create a duplicate MOTOR signal by right-clicking on MOTOR and selecting *Duplicate*. Drag and drop the signal on the page.
- **7.** Invert the STOP signal by right-clicking on the dot and selecting *Invert*.



Save, Compile, Test, and Download the Program

Save the Program

Left-click on the *Save* button 💾 to save your program edits. A window appears, which you can use to document your changes. Select *OK*.



The FB editor menu bar displays the number of edits since the last save. Following a save, it displays "(unchanged)".

Compile the Code

- 1. Close the *Type Instance* Program. (See the arrow below.)
- 2. Right-click on *Resource* and select *Code Generation*.
- **3.** The results of the code generation are shown on the Error State Viewer. If the Error State Viewer is not visible, click on the red

roter: Uplet: Lot: Window Loos Hep
Image: Second
PROJ POU TYPE
FirstProject ■ Configuration ■ Monogram ■ Imonogram
Configuration
Besource Besource STOP DeaType
Standardubs ∰ DataType
B StandardLibs
⊡ ▼ IEC61131-3
😟 🤜 Bistable
🔁 🔻 Bitstr
ROL VAR VAR INPUT VAR OUTPUT VAR GLOBAL VA
-IF ROR Name A Declaration Initial value Longname (4) to the transmission T
I SHR
Error-state viewer
E-Compare Date/Time A Level Text
EI- Convert 3/8/2004 10:25:30 PM Information PDST-Compiler finished
Lounter 3/8/2004 10:25:30 PM Information MCG004: Binary code generation finished by (Besource)
Egge 3/8/2004 10.25/30 PM Information MCG018: Errors=0.4/animos=0
Numeric Sectory in Examination incontrols Ends with image of the sectory of the s
Select Sources, rozestor, manimatur McCool, Entimee code generated to CC & roganin new trop

triangle Δ to make it visible.

If the compile was successful, "Error Free code generated" appears in the Error-State Viewer.

TIP

If you are using a GuardPLC 1800, you will see a warning in the Error State Viewer. Go to the Hardware Management window to view the warning, which reads "USED' has an initial value, but no source." Disregard this warning, because the "USED" signal has an initial value of 1, but no source drives its value.
Run an Off-Line Simulation

To test the code before downloading it to the GuardPLC, run an off-line simulation:

1. Right-click on *Resource* and select *OFF-Line-Simulation*. The *OLS* tab appears.

🖗 RSLogix Guard	PLUS Project Man	agement: "C:\Program	Files\RSLogix Guar	d PLUS\PR	OJECT\FirstProje	ct"	
Project Object Ec	lit <u>W</u> indow <u>T</u> ools	Help					
	7 808			B	🖺 🔏 🖻		
PROJ POU TY	'PE OLS 🖊						
<u> </u>	DZ22						
Resource							
Name	State						
Resource	Stopped						
TypeInstan	Stopped						
TypeInstanc	e : Configuration\Re:	source\TypeInstance\Typ					
◀							
			Error-state viewer				
			Date/Time 🔺	l	Level	Text	
			3/8/2004, 10:25	30 PM 1	nformation	POST-Compiler finished	
/			3/8/2004, 10:25	30 PM 1	nformation	MCG004: Binary code gen	eration finisł
			3/8/2004, 10:25	30 PM 1	nformation	MCG018: Errors=0/Warnin	gs=0
		100 - 1	3/8/2004, 10:25	30 PM	nformation	MCG009: Error-free code g	enerated fo 🗸
				Page nam	ne:	Page no.: /	Pos.: /

2. Double left-click on [I] TypeInstance above.

🙌 RSLogix Guard PLUS Project Manage	ement: "C:\Program Files\RSI	Logix Guard PLUS\	PROJECT\FirstProject"	- Configuration\Res	<u>- 0 ×</u>
Project Object Edit Window Tools H	elp				
		B	🕒 🔏 🖻 🔞		
PROJ POU TYPE OLS	START MOTOR	nfiguration\Resou	rce\TypeInstance\Typ	e (unchanged) MOTOR	
	VAR VAR IN Name A Declarat	PUT VAR OUTI	PUT VAR GLOBAL ' lue Longname		•
	Error-state viewer				
	Date/Time 🔺	Level	Text		
	3/8/2004, 10:25:30 PM 3/8/2004, 10:25:30 PM 3/8/2004, 10:25:30 PM	Information Information	POST-Compiler finished MCG004: Binary code get MCG018: Errors=0.4/(cm)	neration finished for <res< th=""><th>ource></th></res<>	ource>
•	3/8/2004, 10:25:30 PM 3/8/2004, 10:25:30 PM	Information	MCG009: Error-free code	generated for <c:\progra< th=""><th>am Files\RS</th></c:\progra<>	am Files\RS
		Page	name:	Page no.: A/0	Pos.: 49/66%

3. Select points to toggle/view during the simulation. To select a point, left-click on a point, drag, release, and left-click again to activate.



4. Start the simulation by left clicking on the blue flag button.



- **5.** Double left-click on the yellow field to toggle TRUE/FALSE. Blue lines represent OFF. Red lines represent ON.
- **6.** When finished testing, stop the simulation by selecting the *Stop* icon.



7. Close the Off-line simulation using the *Close OLS* icon.





If you do not save your changes, you will have to re-select the points to simulate.

8. Click on the *PROJ* tab to return to the project tree.

Download the Program

- **1.** Connect the GuardPLC to your PC's Ethernet port using a Cat. 5 Ethernet cable.
- 2. In the Hardware Management window, close the Signal Editor.
- 3. Right-click on [60000] Resource.
- **4.** Select Online \rightarrow Control Panel.
- **5.** The default Username is Administrator with no password. Click *OK*. The Control Panel opens.



You can use the [Ctrl]+[A] shortcut to enter the default Username and Password.

If you are unable to go online, see Chapter 4 for information on determining the IP address and SRS of the GuardPLC and for information on the appropriate setting for your PC's IP address.

📴 Control Panel [NewRe	source]					_ _ _ _ _
PADT Resource Communi	ation Test Mode	Extra Help				
🔊 🎜 🕨 🔳 🗾	1)					
Resource State Safety I	Parameters 🛛 Sta	tistics P2P State	Remote I/O	HH State	Environment data	OS 🔹
, i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i						
CPU State	RUN					
COM State	RUN					
Program Name	FirstProject					
Program State	RUN					
Faulty I/O Modules	0					
Force State	Forcing disabled					
Remaining Force Time [s]	0					
					F I/O Online	Administrator

6. If the GuardPLC is in RUN mode, change to STOP mode. Left-click on the *Stop* icon on the Control Panel.



Answer Yes to the warning prompt.

7. Left-click on the *Download* icon.

Control Panel [GPLC1600_1		
PADT Re	source Communication	
p 72		

Answer Yes to the warning prompt.

8. Make sure the download was successful by checking the Status Field for a "Resource Configuration successfully loaded" message.



9. Put the GuardPLC into RUN mode by clicking on the *Coldstart* button and answering *Yes* to the warning prompt.

How to Monitor the Routine Online

To monitor the routine online, you must be online with the controller, and the controller must be in RUN mode.

1. In the Project Management window, right-click on *Resource* and select *ON-Line Test*. The Project Manager appears as shown below.

🕐 RSLogix Guard	l PLUS Project Mar	nagement: "C:\Program File	s\RSLogix Guard PL	US\PROJECT\	FirstProje	ct"		_ [
Project Object E	dit <u>W</u> indow <u>T</u> ools	Help							
				B	B	6 🗈 🚷		X	ļi.
PROJ POU T	YPE OLT	•							
News	[Chuk	1							
Name	State	<u> </u>							
TypeInstan	ce : Configuration\Re	source\TypeInstance\Type							
			Error-state viewer						1
			Date/Time 🔺	Lev	el	Text			
			3/9/2004, 10:55	:29 AM Info	rmation	MCG009:	Error-free code genera	ated for <0	
			10	Page na	ame:		Page no.: /	Pos:	7

2. Double left-click on [I] TypeInstance.

BSI only Guard PLUS Project Management: "C:\	Program Files\RSI only Guard PLUS\PROTECT\FirstProject" - Configuration\Resource\Ty
Project Object Edit Window Tools Help	
PROJ POU TYPE OLT	🖸 OLT TypeInstance : Configuration\Resource\TypeInstance\Type (unchanged)
Resource: Resource (Configuration)	FALSE
Mama Chata	START
	I MOTOR
	MOTOR
	FÂLSE
	VAR VAR INPUT VAR OUTPUT VAR GLOBAL
	Name 🛆 Declaration Initial value Longname
	Date/Time A Lever Text
	Page name: Page no.: A/0 Pos.: 8/75

If the lines appear RED and BLUE, then the monitor is active. Test the routine and monitor the function code.

3. Close the On-Line Test when finished testing.



4. Select the *PROJ* tab to return to the project tree.



If the lines are RED/BLACK striped, then the Control Panel is NOT online with the GuardPLC or the GuardPLC is not in RUN mode.

See Chapter 4 for information on going online with the GuardPLC controller.

Check, Download, Start, and Test a Routine

Using This Chapter

	For information about:	See page
	checking consistency (whether you need to download your routine)	6-1
	downloading a routine	6-2
	starting a routine	6-4
	testing a routine	6-5
	how a routine executes	6-6
	To download and run a routine, you must first:	
	1. Complete your system configuration and your ro	outine logic.
	2. Save your logic by selecting <i>Object</i> \rightarrow <i>Save</i> on the Management menu bar.	e Project
	3. Generate code. Make sure all your system config complete before you generate code.	guration is
	4. Connect the programming terminal (running RSI PLUS software) to the controller. See Chapter 4 f on programming over an Ethernet link.	Logix Guard for information
	5. Download the routine to the controller. See page	e 6-2.
	6. Start the routine. See page 6-4.	
Checking Consistency	To determine whether or not you need to download yo can use the Check Consistency feature to verify wheth running in the controller is the same routine you are e RSLogix Guard PLUS. Select <i>Resource</i> \rightarrow <i>Check Consi</i> . compare the two programs. If all the codes match, you has been previously downloaded to the controller.	our routine, you her the routine editing in <i>stency</i> to ar offline routine

Downloading a Routine

1. Select *Online* \rightarrow *Control Panel*. The software automatically asks you to log in.



2. After you successfully log in, the Control Panel opens.

	Control Panel [GPLC1	500_1]						-DX
	PADT Resource Communic	ation Test Mode Ex	tra Help					
Coldstart		1			— D	ownload		
	Resource State Safety F	Parameters Statistic	s P2P State	Distributed I/O	HH State	Environment Data	OS	IP Se ∢ ►
Stop ——								
	CPU State	RUN						
	COM State	RUN						
	Program Name	Routine						
	Program State	RUN						
	Faulty I/O Modules	0						
	Force State	Forcing disabled						
	Remaining Force Time [s]	0						
						F I/O Onli	he Admir	nistrator

- **3.** The routine must be stopped before downloading is permitted. Select *Resource* \rightarrow *Stop*.
- **4.** Select *Resource* \rightarrow *Download* to load the routine into the controller.



IMPORTANT If your controller is in FAILURE_STOP, it must be rebooted before you can download a routine. See page 8-4.

Troubleshooting the Download Process

The SRS of the controller must match the SRS saved in the routine in order to download the routine. When you specify an SRS for a controller in a project, that SRS gets saved in the routine when you generate code.

Checking the SRS of the Controller

1. Select *Online* \rightarrow *Communication Settings*.

📴 RSLogix Guard Pl	LUS Hardware Management		Communication Settings [Resource]
<u>Project</u> <u>E</u> dit <u>S</u> ignals	<u>Online Windows H</u> elp		Address PES using
🖻 📲 example1	<u>C</u> ontrol Panel		MAL Address UU - eU - a1 - 1 Get
🖻 - 📕 Configuratio	Eorce Editor		Address PES using
🖃 🔀 [2] Hes	<u>D</u> iagnostics		
	<u>A</u> ccess Management		
	<u>Communication</u> Settings		Communication Settings
ė- e [0]	<u>M</u> ulti Control Panel		IP Address 192 . 168 . 0 . 99 Factory Settings
· · •		1	Subnet Mask 255 . 255 . 252 . 0 -> Project
			Default Gateway 0 . 0 . 0 . 0
			System.Rack 2 0
			Set via MAC Set via IP Cancel Help

- In the *MAC address* field, enter the MAC address of the controller. The MAC address is on the sticker on the side of a GuardPLC 1200 controller, on the label positioned over both lower RJ-45 connections on GuardPLC 1600/1800 controllers and I/O, or on the front bezel of the AB-CPU module of a GuardPLC 2000 controller.
- **3.** Click *Get*. The controller responds back with the IP address and the SRS it is currently using.

Now you know the correct SRS to use. Change the SRS and generate code again. Then the download should work.

Updating the SRS in the Controller

In some cases, most likely after a reboot due to a FAILURE_STOP, the SRS of the controller might be the same as the SRS in the routine, but the routine still will not download. If this happens, change the SRS to the same number and click *OK*, as shown on the following page. This updates the SRS in the controller and corrects the issue. You should now be able to download the routine.

TIP

For more information on recovering from FAILURE_STOP, see page 8-4.

1. Select *Extra* \rightarrow *Change System ID* (SRS).



2. Enter the SRS and click OK.

🕯 🖥 Change System	n ID [GPLC1600_	1]	x
System.Rack	50000		0
<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp	

3. Try the download again.

Starting a Routine

After you successfully download a routine, you can start the routine. From the Control Panel, select *Resource* \rightarrow *Coldstart* or use the *Coldstart* button on the menu bar.



Options:	Description:
Warmstart	Allows the user routine to be started by the programming terminal and to continue with the previously saved Retain signals. You must have Administrator or Read/Write access to initiate a warmstart.
Coldstart	If a routine is in STOP or FREEZE mode, it can be started using this cold start option. The cold start option re-initializes the routine and available process values are lost.
Stop	Use this option to stop a routine that is in RUN or FREEZE mode.

Testing a Routine

Test a routine to check for and eliminate errors. You must have Administrator or Read/Write access to test a routine. Test options are discussed in the table below.

From the *Test Mode* menu on the Control Panel, select the test option you want.



Test Option:	Description:
Enter Test Mode (Hot Start)	To enter test mode hot, a routine must be loaded and started in the controller.
	After a security query, the routine is paused (FREEZE) while retaining the current process data after terminating the cycle. No input signals are processed. The output signals retain their current state.
Enter Test Mode (Warm Start)	Halts the execution of the routine with the signals declared as Retain retaining their values and with all other signals being reset.
Enter Test Mode (Cold Start)	A routine must be loaded in the controller to allow you to "enter test mode" cold.
	After a security query, the routine is initialized, started, and immediately enters FREEZE mode. No input signals are processed, and all the output signals stay in their basic state.
	If the routine was in RUN mode when enter test mode cold was selected, the cycle in progress is terminated and the process data is re-initialized.
Single cycle	Single cycle can only be executed when the controller is in the test mode. Use single cycle to manually trigger the execution of a single cycle of the routine. The routine is executed exactly once. The input signals are read in, processed, and the resulting output signals are transferred.
	Use the force editor to perform a step-by-step check of the data. See Chapter 9 for information on monitoring signals.
Continue with Run	This option terminates the test mode. The routine mode changes from FREEZE to RUN without re-initialization. The current process data are retained. (This corresponds to a routine hot start.)

How a Routine Executes

A controller has only one routine. A routine can be in any one of these states:

Routine State:	Description:
RUN_RUN	 The controller is in the RUN mode. The routine is executed cyclically by the controller. Input data are processed in the routine. Output data of the routine are operated.
RUN_FREEZE	 The controller is in the RUN mode. The routine is not executed. No input data are processed by the routine. No output data of the routine are operated. This mode is not permissible for safety-related operation!
STOP	The controller is in the STOP mode.The routine is not (no longer) executed.All outputs have been reset.
FAILURE_STOP	The controller is in the STOP mode.The routine was stopped due to an error.All outputs have been reset.

Controlling a Routine

You can control a routine using the actions described below:

Control Action:	Description:
Start the routine from STOP	Starting the routine is the same as transferring the controller from the STOP mode into the RUN mode. The routine is then transferred into the RUN_RUN mode. If Freezing is activated while starting, the routine will be in the RUN_FREEZE mode. However, freeze operation is only possible if the software switch "Freeze Enable" has been enabled. In addition to starting in freeze mode, cold start is also possible.
	Starting a routine is only possible when both the controller restart switch and the routine restart switch are enabled.
Start the routine from RUN	The routine is transferred into the RUN_RUN mode if it has not already been operating in this mode. Starting is also possible in cold start, hot start, and no-freeze modes.
	This function is not allowed for safety operations of the controller!
Single cycle the routine	The routine must be in the RUN_FREEZE mode. Exactly one RUN cycle of the routine is executed, and the routine is then put back into the RUN_FREEZE mode. The command for the single cycle is the start command with the attributes hot start and freeze. This does not have any effect on the mode of the controller. Single cycle is only performed by the controller for the routine if freeze mode is enabled.
	This function is not allowed for safety operations of the controller!
Restart the routine	If the routine is in the FAILURE_STOP mode, it can be restarted via the programming software using a start command. After the restart, the entire routine is checked again.
Stop the routine	Stopping the routine is the same as transferring the controller from RUN mode into STOP mode. The routine is then transferred from RUN into the STOP mode.
Freeze the routine	The routine is transferred from the RUN_RUN mode into the RUN_FREEZE mode. This does not affect the mode of the controller. Freeze mode must be enabled for the routine.
	This function is not allowed for safety operations of the controller!

Using the Control Panel

Using This Chapter

The Control Panel is your window into the online functionality of the controller. Use the tabs to modify or monitor controller status.

For information about:	See page
resource state tab	7-2
safety parameters tab	7-3
statistics tab	7-4
P2P (Peer-to-Peer) state tab	7-4
distributed I/O tab	7-5
HH (High-Level High-Speed) state tab	7-6
environment data tab	7-6
OS tab	7-7
using the Multi-Control Panel	7-8
Control Panel resource menu	7-11
Control Panel extra menu	7-12

Resource State Tab

] - Control Panel [GPLC1	600_1]					_D×
PADT Resource Communic	ation Test Mode Ext	ra Help				
🔊 🎜 🕨 🔳 🚺	1)					
Resource State Safety F	Parameters Statistic	s P2P State	Distributed I/O	HH State	Environment Data	OS IP Se 🔹 🕨
,						
CPU State	RUN					
COM State	RUN					
Program Name	Routine					
Program State	RUN					
Faulty I/O Modules	0					
Force State	Forcing disabled					
Remaining Force Time [s]	0					
					F I/O Online	Administrator

This field:	Displays:
CPU State	the current state of the controller.
	Possible states are INIT, RUN, STOP/VALID_CONFIGURATION, STOP/INVALID_CONFIGURATION, and FAILURE_STOP. See "Controller Modes" on page 8-2.
COM State	state of the communication portion of the controller.
	Possible states are RUN, STOP, and OS_LOADING.
Program Name	the routine name.
	The name assigned by the user to the routine. The default name is "Routine."
Program State	the current state of the routine.
	Possible states are RUN, STOP, FREEZE, and FAILURE_STOP. See "Routine Modes" on page 8-8.
Faulty I/O Modules	the number of faulty I/O modules, when the controller is in RUN.
Force State	the force status.
	0 – forcing is disabled 1 – ready for forcing (the controller is in stop but is set for forcing) 2 – forcing is active
Remaining Force Time [s]	the remaining force time in seconds.

Safety Parameters Tab

] = Control Panel [GPLC1600_1]							- D X
PADT Resource Communication Test	Mode Extra	Help					
<i>₽ 1</i> 2 → ■ 副 →							
Resource State Safety Parameters	Statistics	P2P State	Distributed I/	0 HH State	Environment Data	OS	IP Settings
		Allowed Actio	ns				
		Main Enable	J	~			
CPU Configuration CRC 16#0000000	ภ 🗌	Autostart	J	~			
System.Rack 60000.0		Start/Restart	allowed	~			
Safety Time [ms] 100		Loading allow	ved	~			
Watchdog Time [ms] 50		Test Mode al	lowed	~			
	-	Online Test a	llowed	~			
		Forcing allow	ed I				
		Stop on Force	e Timeout	~			
					F 1/0 K	nline Ac	Iministrator

This field:	Displays:
CPU configuration CRC	cyclic redundancy check (CRC) selection for the configuration in the CPU (in hexadecimal notation).
	This identifies the configuration loaded in the controller.
System ID	the system ID.
Safety Time [ms]	the safety time in milliseconds.
Watchdog Time [ms]	the watchdog time in milliseconds.
Main Enable	whether controller switches can be changed while the controller is executing.
Autostart	whether the controller automatically starts up after rebooting the controller or applying power to the controller.
Start/Restart allowed	whether you can start a controller manually.
Loading allowed	whether you can load new configuration information to the controller.
Test Mode allowed	whether you can freeze the routine.
Forcing allowed	whether you can force tags.
Stop on Force Timeout	whether to stop executing the routine when the force time expires.

Statistics Tab

i i Contuel Daniel I CDI	C160	0.1	1		_					
Control Panel [GPL	сты	JU_1 .		tada Estas		_	_			느니스
PADT Resource Commu	Jnical	tion	est M	lode Extra	Help					
🔊 🌮 🕨 🎟	1	•								
Resource State Safe	ty Pa	ramete	ers	Statistics	P2P State	Distributed I/O	HH State	Environment Data	OS	IP Settings
					·					
Date / Time 03/03/20	04.1	6-08-2	ก							
Date / Time 00/00/20		0.00.2	<u> </u>							
	Inch		an in							
Cools Time for al	last	avg.	min.	max.						
Cycle Time (ms)	3	2	2	0						
Com. Time Slice [ms]	U	U	U	U						
Number of Time Slices	U	U	U	U						
								F 1/0 0	nline	Administrator

This field:	Displays:
Cycle Time [ms] average	the average cycle time (in milliseconds) of the last 50 cycles.
Cycle Time [ms] last	the cycle time (in milliseconds) of the last cycle.
Cycle Time [ms] min.	the fastest cycle time (in milliseconds).
Cycle Time [ms] max.	the slowest cycle time (in milliseconds).
	If this value exceeds the Watchdog Time, the controller goes to FAILURE_STOP.
Com. Time Slice [ms]	the time required to process all Peer-to-Peer communication tasks within a CPU cycle.
Number of Time Slices	the number of time slices required to process all communication tasks.
	This value should always be 1 to avoid having multiple CPU cycles to complete all communication tasks.
Date/Time	the date and time in the controller.

P2P (Peer-to-Peer) State Tab

	🕇 Control P	anel [Robo	t1]																_ 🗆 ×
	PADT Resou	ADT Resource Communication Test Mode Extra Help																	
1	# R 🕩	- <u>e</u>l	1)																
l	Resource Sta	ate Safety	Parameters	Statist	ics P2	P State	Distributed	1/0 1	HH State	Environme	nt Data	OS	IP Settir	igs					
	[[]]	<u></u>	[a]	D. T.L					[0	D	D	F 111	D : T	D 17			
11	Hesource	System, Hack	State	Hsp1 last	Hsplav	(Hspimir	n Hspl max	MsgNo	AckMsgNa	DataSeq	Upens	Resends	BadMsg	EarlyMsg	Receivel	Resend	ACKIMU	CurKeVer	NewKeVer
Ш	RobotB	60001.0	Connected	11	10	5	19	54980	54979	54980	1	0	0	0	500	100	0	\$#000020e	16#000020e3
Ш																			
Ш																			
Ш																			

This field:	Displays:
Resource	the name of the controller.
System ID	the network ID of the controller.
State	the status of the communication.

This field:	Displays:
RspT (last, avg, min, max)	the Measured ResponseTime for a message from $PES_1 \rightarrow PES_2 \rightarrow PES_1$, based on the network hardware, CPU cycle time, and Peer-to-Peer profile. This parameter will be optimized later.
MsgNr	the Counter (32-bit resolution) for all messages sent to a controller.
AckMsgNr	the number of the received message that the controller has to acknowledge.
DataSeq	the Counter (16-bit resolution) for sent messages, which contain process data.
Opens	the number of successful connects to a controller. A figure higher than 1 indicates that a controller dropped out and has been reconnected.
Resends	the Counter (32-bit resolution) for messages that have been resent due to an elapsed ResendTMO.
BadMsgs	the Counter (32-bit resolution) for received messages that are corrupted, or are not expected at that instant. A corrupt message, for example, is a message with a wrong sender or with a faulty CRC. An unexpected message, for example, is an "Open" command, when the controllers are already connected.
EarlyMsgs	the Counter (32-bit resolution) for received messages that are not in the correct sequence. If a message drops out and is lost at the addressee, there is a gap in the received messages, and the next message comes early.
Receive Tmo	Receive Timeout as entered by the user.
ResendTMO	Resend Timeout as set by the profile.
AckTmo	Acknowledge Timeout as set by the profile.
CurKeVer	CRC for the Peer-to-Peer configuration. Identical to the Peer-to-Peer system signal.
NewKeVer	Reserved for future use.

Distributed I/O Tab

📔 Control Panel	Control Panel [GuardPLC 20_8 DC In_Out_1]					
PADT Resource	Communication Test I	Mode Extra Help				
<i># 1</i> 2 🕨 🔳	 1▶					
Resource State	Safety Parameters	Statistics P2P	State Distributed I/O	HH State Envir	onment Data 📗 OS	IP S∈ ∢
Stop Synchronize	Resource	: System.Rack St	ste			

This field:	Displays:	
Resource	the name of the module.	
System.Rack	the System.Rack ID of the module.	
State	the status of the I/O module: • RUN • STOP/VALID_CONFIGURATION • STOP/INVALID_CONFIGURATION	ERROR_STOPnot connected

HH (High-Level High-Speed) State Tab

🕻 Control Panel [Robot/	A]							- D X
PADT Resource Communic	ADT Resource Communication Test Mode Extra Help							
🔊 🎜 🕨 🔳 🗾 🗌	1)							
Resource State Safety F	Paramete	ers Statistic:	P2P State	Distributed I/C) HH State	Environme	nt Data 🛛 OS 📗	IP Se ◀ 🕨
last	avo. n	nin. max.						
Bus Cycle Time [ms] 0	0	0 0						
Resource LinkID	State	RspT last [ms]	RspT avg. [ms]	RspT min. [ms]	RspT max. [ms]	Link Mode	Token Group ID	
RobotB 16#ea610001		0	0	0	0	TCS direct	4	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·								

This field:	Displays:
Bus Cycle Time	the time in milliseconds for a Token cycle. The value is 0, if Token Passing is off (any Cleanroom profile).
Resource	the name of the controller.
LinkID	the controller network ID.
State	the status of communication.
RspT	 If Link Mode is "TCS direct" (Token Passing OFF), RspT is the ResponseTime of the HH profile for a message from PES₁ → PES₂ → PES₁, based on the network hardware and topology. This parameter cannot be changed by the user. If Link Mode is "TCS TOKCYC" (Token Passing ON), RspT is part of the Bus Cycle Time.
Link Mode	 "TCS direct" when Token Passing is OFF. "TCS TOKCYC" when Token Passing is ON.
Token Group ID	the ID of the Token Group.

Environment Data Tab

] † Control Panel [GPLC	C1600_2]					-D×
PADT Resource Commu	unication Test Mo	de Extra Help				
🔊 🕫 🕨 🔳 🧾	1					
Resource State Safety	ty Parameters 🏼 🤅	Statistics P2P Stat	e Distributed I/O	HH State	Environment Data	OS IP S∈ ∢ ►
Temperature State 16	6#01					
Power Supply State 16	6#00					
Fan State 18	6#ff					
Relay State 16	6#00					
					F I/O Onlin	e Administrator

This tab displays status messages in hexadecimal form for Temperature State, Power Supply State, Fan State, and Relay State. See "Programming Controller Data" on page B-1 for an explanation of the error bits.

OS Tab

Control Panel	[GPLC1	500_1]							
ADT Resource C	Iommunic	ation Test M	lode Extra	Help					
₹ <i>1</i> 2 ► ■	<u>e</u>	1							
Resource State	Safety F	arameters	Statistics	P2P State	Distributed I/O	HH State	Environment Data	OS	IP Settings
									,
Serial No 98220	0615000	58426011							
	Version	rpr	-						
CPUIOS	4 32	16#7d1c90	ie i						
CPU OS Loader	4.8	16#ee35133	8						
CPU Bootloader	4.14	16#370fd05	1						
COM OS	5.14	16#4d1d802	29						
COM OS Loader	5.6	16#fc1fe75	8						
COM Bootloader	5.4	16#eb90c86	57						
			_						
							E 577 B		
							F I/O IC	ninë	administrator

This field:	Displays:
Serial Number	the serial number of the communication module of the controller.
CPU OS	the version of the operating system and the cyclic redundancy check of the operating system (in hexadecimal). (Version 2.4 or later is required for Peer-to-Peer communication.)
CPU Loader	the version of the operating system loader and the cyclic redundancy check of the operating system loader (in hexadecimal).
CPU BootLoader	the version of the boot loader and the cyclic redundancy check of the boot loader (in hexadecimal).
COM OS	the version of the communication operating system and the cyclic redundancy check of the communication operating system (in hexadecimal). (Version 2.4 or later is required for Peer-to-Peer communication.)
COM OS Loader	the version of the communication operating system loader and the cyclic redundancy check of the communication operating system loader (in hexadecimal).
COM BootLoader	the version of the communication boot loader and the cyclic redundancy check of the communication boot loader (in hexadecimal).

Using the Multi-Control Panel

The Multi Control Panel allows you to connect the programming terminal to more than one controller in the project in one window and to perform actions such as downloads, controller starts, invoking the force editor, etc. simultaneously.

1. Open the Multi Control Panel by selecting *Online* →*Multi Control Panel*.

When the Multi Control Panel is opened for the first time, it does not contain any controllers.

2. Add a controller to the Multi Control Panel by dragging and dropping the Resource from the project tree into the Multi Control Panel.

ġ	RSLogix Guard PLUS Project Mai	hagement: "C:\Program Files\	RSLogix Guard PLUS\PROJECT\CAT4Estop"
P	RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardwa	re Management	
	Project Edit Signals Online Wind	lows <u>H</u> elp	
F	CAT4Estop CAT4Estop CAT4Estop CAT6 (1) RobotA (1) RobotA (1) RobotA (1) RobotC (1) Robot	Covis Heip	e Help System.Rack CPU State CPU Configuration CRC Avg. Cycle Time Rem. Force Time Faulty I/O Module COM IF Ie0 IP Address 192 . 168 . 0 . 99 System.Rack 4 0 User name Password Access type Read/Write OK Cancel Help
	 ■ ■	iguage dll. Version: 4.0.25 RSLogic J.dl., Version: 4.0.25 RSLogic J.dl., Version: 4.0.26 RSLogic Guar uals. dll., Version: 4.0.26 RSLogic Gi text. dll., Version: 4.0.26 RSLogi settlings. dll. Version: 4.0.26 RSLog	Gruad PUIS English IPLUS English Jard PUIS Jard PUIS Jard PUIS English x Guard PUUS

3. After a controller has been dropped in the Multi Control Panel, the Login window opens. Enter the correct Username and Password to connect the controller to the programming terminal.

You must have Read/Write or Administrator rights (Access type) to download a routine into the controller.

4. Add as many controllers to the Multi Control Panel as you need. The list of controllers in the Multi Control Panel can be sorted by clicking on the column headlines. The Multi Control Panel displays the following controller information:

Mu	lti Control	Panel								
PADT	Resource	Online Table H	Help							
] , ~ ~	🔊 𝔅 ▶ ■ 📴 🚺 😵 🖉 🔳 🗆 ↔									
	Name	System.Rack	CPU St	ate	CPU Configuration CRC	Avg. Cycle	Rem. Force Time	Faulty I/O Modu	Action	
1	RobotA	60000.0	STOP /	VALID CONFIG	16#3ece3bed	2	0	0	Download:OK	
2	RobotB	60001.0	STOP /	VALID CONFIG	16#fc9f0419	2	0	0	Download:OK	
•										
All ope	rations succ	essfully terminate	ed.							

This field:	Displays:
Name	Controller name
System.Rack	Controller ID
CPU State	Status of the controller CPU, such as RUN, STOP, STOP/VALID CONFIGURATION, STOP/INVALID CONFIGURATION, etc.
CPU Configuration CRC	Checksum (cyclic redundancy check) of the CPU configuration, displayed in hexadecimal.
Avg. Cycle Time	Average CPU cycle time in milliseconds. This figure depends on the complexity of the logic and, because of the Schedule Time Slice, on the network load.
Rem. Force Time	Remaining force time in seconds (time until forcing is deactivated). Value is "0" when forcing is not active or disabled.
Faulty I/O Modules	Number of faulty IO modules. A fault can result from a hardware malfunction or from incorrect configuration.
Action	Display of a Multi Control Panel command and command status (e.g. Start, Start:Ok). The field is cleared after five seconds.

You can perform a Multi Control Panel command on one or more controllers. To select a single controller, click on the line number left of the controller name. The boundaries of this line become thicker. Hold down the CTRL key and click on another line number to add this controller to your selection. Use the SHIFT key to select controllers from line x to line y. To select all the controllers, use the *Select All*

icon 🔳 on the tool bar.

The following commands can be carried out using the Multi Control Panel buttons in the button bar:

Table 7.1 Multi Control Panel Buttons

Button	Command
ą,	Connect Connects the programming software to the selected controller(s) after loss of communication or manual disconnect. After manual disconnect, a new login with password is required.
Fi	Disconnect Disconnects the programming software from the selected controller(s).
•	Coldstart Performs a coldstart on the selected controller(s).
	Stop Stops the selected controller(s).
	Download Loads the routine(s) into the selected controller(s). Prior to download, the code generator must have successfully generated program code and the selected controller(s) must be in STOP mode. NOTE: You cannot download a routine into a controller other than the one for which the logic was created.
문의	Control Panel Starts the control panel for the selected controller(s). This command can be carried out for a single controller by selecting <i>Online</i> \rightarrow <i>Control Panel</i> .
ಲೆ	Diagnostics Starts the diagnostics display for the selected controller(s). This command can be carried out for a single controller by selecting <i>Online</i> \rightarrow <i>Diagnostics</i> .
	Force Editor Starts the force editor for the selected controller(s). This command can be carried out for a single controller by selecting <i>Online</i> \rightarrow <i>Force Editor</i> .
	Select All Selects all controllers in the list.
	Deselect Deselects marked controllers.
«×	Remove Controller Removes the selected controller(s) from the list. Removing a controller from the Multi Control Panel also disconnects the communication.

Control Panel Resource Menu

Select $Resource \rightarrow Safety$ in the Control Panel to modify the safety settings of the controller.



IMPORTANT

Any settings you change via the *Resource* menu are directly updated in the controller and are saved in the project.

Menu Item:	Description:
Check Consistency	compares the program running in the controller with the program you are editing in RSLogix Guard PLUS software. If they match, your offline project has previously been downloaded to the GuardPLC.
Set Main Enable	allows safety parameters to be changed. You can only select <i>Set Main Enable</i> when the controller is in STOP.
	For more information, see page 8-7.
Reset Main Enable	keeps safety parameters from being changed.
	For more information, see page 8-7.
Change Safety Parameters	changes the safety parameters, if Set Main Enable is activated.
	You must have Read/Write or Administrator access to be able to change safety parameters.
	For more information about these parameters, see page 8-7.

TIP

See "Downloading a Routine" on page 6-2 and "Starting a Routine" on page 6-4 for information on *Warmstart, Coldstart, Stop,* and *Download* menu items.

Control Panel Extra Menu

Use the *Extra* menu of the Control Panel to modify communications settings and change controller operation. You must have Administrator access to use most of these menu options as indicated in the table below.

[Control Panel [GPLC1600_1]				
PADT Resource Communication Test Mode	Extra Help			
デ 22 ▶ ■ 副 1▶	Set <u>D</u> ate/Time			
Resource State Safety Parameters Stat	Change ≦ystem ID			
	Device Settings			
	Update OS +			
	Reboot Resource			
Date / Time 03/03/2004 16:10:06	Load Resource Configuration from Elash			
	Clear Resource Configuration			
	Set <u>B</u> ackplane Type			

Menu Item:	Description:	
Set Date/Time	sets the controller clock, if Set Main Enable is activated.	
	Enter the date as mm/dd/yy and the time as hh:mm.	
Change System ID (SRS)	changes the system ID (SRS) of the controller.	
	You must have Administrator access to be able to change the system ID (SRS).	
	For more information, see page 4-22.	
Device Settings	changes the Ethernet network parameters.	
	You must have Administrator access and the controller must be in STOP mode.	
Update OS	allows you to download new COM OS and CPU OS.	
Reboot Resource	reboots the controller.	
	See "Recovering From A FAILURE_STOP" on page 8-4.	
Load Resource Configuration from Flash	loads a copy of the last executable configuration to the controller	
Clear Resource Configuration	deletes the program memory of the controller and resets the configuration of the CPU and COM modules.	
	GuardPLC 1200 and 2000 only: This does not affect the battery-buffered memory for long term diagnostics, short term diagnostics, date and time settings, system ID (SRS), or IP address.	
	To reset a controller to default settings, clear the controller and remove the backup battery for at least 20 seconds. Removing the backup battery: deletes date and time deletes long term and short term diagnosis deletes the configuration saved in the battery-buffered memory deletes all user accounts does not delete the program memory does not reset the configuration of the CPU and COM modules Use Online → Communication Settings and write this value back to the battery-buffered memory. This validates the configuration and you can restart the routine. 	

Menu Item:	Description:
Set Backplane Type	restores backplane information.
	The individual modules (CPU, COM, I/O) are linked to each other over the backplane. The controller requires this information to be able to conduct hardware tests. If the EEPROM that stores the backplane information loses its contents, use this menu option to write the backplane type back into the EEPROM.
	You must have Administrator access to be able to set the backplane type.
	Follow these steps to set the backplane type:
	1. Load a project that is consistent with the connected controller type.
	ATTENTION: If you try to write the backplane type of a controller (such as a GuardPLC 1200 controller) with the backplane type of another controller (such as a GuardPLC 2000 controller), the overwritten controller can no longer be used and must be repaired by the manufacturer.
	2. Select Set Backplane Type.
	The backplane type is automatically entered into the dialog window. 3. Change the <i>Backplane Version</i> to 0. 4. Click <i>OK</i> to confirm the change.

Controller Configuration and Modes of Operation

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
controller modes	8-1
controller configuration	8-5
routine modes	8-8
load a configuration and routine (in STOP mode only)	8-9
routine test mode	8-10

The GuardPLC operating system is stored permanently in the memory of the controller. The operating system is designed to make sure that all tasks of the controller are performed in a safety-related way.

You have access to the controller via the RSLogix Guard PLUS software so that you can define the functionality of the controller.

Controller Modes

The controller can operate in various modes. These modes depend on the results of the tests of the hardware, software, and the system configuration.

After you apply power to the controller or reboot the controller, the controller first performs a system test of the data and address lines and the flash and RAM memories. Then the controller checks the operating system in the flash memory. During this time, the controller is in the INIT mode.

If all these initialization checks are OK, the operating system is started and the controller changes to the STOP mode.

If any hardware and/or software errors are detected, the controller goes to the FAILURE_STOP mode. If the check of the operating system detected errors, the emergency loader starts. The emergency loader loads an operating system from the programming terminal.

If the controller has a valid configuration and a routine downloaded to the controller, the controller goes to the STOP mode. To have the controller go to the RUN mode:

- set the Autostart switch of the both controller and the routine
- manually select RUN mode from the programming software.

If you stop the controller, it transitions from RUN to STOP and interrupts the execution of the routine. The outputs of the routine and the I/O modules are reset to safe values.

You can use the Emergency Stop system variable to put the controller in STOP mode by programming this variable in your logic or forcing it when necessary.

The following table and flowchart summarize the controller modes:

Mode:	Description:
INIT	Safe state of the controller during initialization and the hardware tests after booting.The controller is performing hardware and software tests.
STOP	 Safe state of the controller without execution of a routine. A loaded routine is in the STOP mode. The outputs of the controller have been reset (LOW). The controller is performing hardware and software tests.
RUN	 The CPU is active. The routine is being executed. I/O signals are being processed. The controller performs non-safety-related communication. The controller performs software tests, hardware tests, and I/O module tests.
FAILURE_STOP	 Safe state of the controller after a system fault. A loaded routine is in STOP or FAILURE_STOP mode. The outputs of the controller are being reset (LOW). The controller is not performing software or hardware tests. The controller is being held in the safe state. The hardware watchdog is not triggered. To recover from FAILURE_STOP, a reboot of the controller is necessary. A reboot can only be initiated via RSLogix Guard PLUS. See "Recovering From A FAILURE_STOP" on page 8-4.



Recovering From A FAILURE_STOP

If the controller is in FAILURE_STOP, you must reboot the controller by selecting *Extra* \rightarrow *Reboot Resource* from the Control Panel as shown below.



TIP

TIP

A Reboot Resource can only be initiated when the controller is in FAILURE_STOP mode. If you attempt a reboot while the controller is in any other mode, an error message is displayed.

If a routine has already been loaded in the controller when FAILURE_STOP occurs, the controller goes to STOP/VALID_CONFIGURATION after booting. If Autostart Enable is activated, the routine starts up automatically.

If a Routine has not been loaded in the controller when FAILURE_STOP occurs, the controller goes to STOP/INVALID_CONFIGURATION after booting.

If the GuardPLC is in STOP/INVALID_CONFIGURATION after booting, you need to update the SRS. Use the update SRS procedure described on page 6-3.

A brand-new GuardPLC 1200 or 2000 controller, into which a backup battery has not yet been installed, is always in FAILURE_STOP and must be rebooted before you can download a routine.

Controller Configuration

To enable the controller to perform its tasks, you have to configure the controller. The parameters you specify are stored in the non-volatile RAM and in the flash file system of the communication section of the controller.

To configure a controller:

- **1.** In the Hardware Management Window, expand the Configuration module.
- 2. Right-click on Resource and select Properties.

RSLogic Guard PLUS Hardware Ma	nəşement			VI /Configuratio	on /Docour	150		
Broject Edit Signals Online Windows E	340		_		on/Resour	ce		
Configuration Configuration Configuration Configuration Configuration Programming Terminal	Type Name	GuerdPLC 1800		Туре	[GuardPLC 1800		7
	System ID (SR5) Saletz Time Incl	50000		Name	F	Resource		
	Watchdog Time [ms]	50		System ID [SRS]) Fe	60000		
	Autostart Start/Restart allowed	2		Safety Time [ms]	ı 🛽	100		
	Loading allowed Test Mode allowed	v		Watchdog Time	[ms] 5	50		
	Online Test allowed Forcing allowed			Main Enable	R	7		
	Stop on Force Timeout max. Com. Time Slice [mo]	10		Autostart	E	-		
	Code Generation Version	3 付		Start/Restart allo	wed 🗔	7		
03/22/2004 11 51:21 115 Into democran	di Veniore 4.0.26 BSLook Bur	ed PLUS Erroleh		Loading allowed	l.	7		
03/22/2004 11:51:21.115, Into: help.dl, Ve 03/22/2004 11:51:21.115, Into: rhisuels.dl 03/22/2004 11:51:21.125, Into: diagtest.dl.	mon: 4.0.26 RSLogix Guard PLI L Version: 4.0.26 RSLogix Guard Version: 4.0.26 RSLogix Guard	JS English PLUS PLUS English		Test Mode allowe	ed [-		
10072220014 1140-21 126 John concertion	e di Venior 4176 RSI nois Fa	MARIK		Online Test allow	ved [-		
				Forcing allowed	Г	-		
				Stop on Force Ti	imeout 🛛 🖪	7		
				max. Com. Time S	Slice [ms] 1	0		
				Code Generation	Version	3		×
				ок	 		ly l	Help

- 3. Use the *Type* pull-down menu to select your controller.
- **4.** Set the controller parameters based on the information in the table on page 8-6.

IMPORTANT The safety time you specify must meet the needs of the controlled process. See the *GuardPLC Controller Systems Safety Reference Manual*, publication 1755-RM001.

For this parameter:	Specify:
System ID (SRS)	the system ID of the controller.
	The system ID is a component of the SRS (System, Rack, Slot), and can be in the range of 2 to 65535. The programming terminal uses the system ID to communicate with the controller. The purpose of the SRS is to match a routine to a specific resource and guarantee that only a routine with a matching SRS can be downloaded to a resource.
	The system ID of the controller should not be set at 1 because 1 is the default system ID for the programming terminal.
	IMPORTANT: The SRS (System, Rack, Slot) set in the configuration is compiled in the routine.EXE file and must match the SRS of the GuardPLC controller in order for a routine to be correctly downloaded to the GuardPLC. A different system ID results in an INVALID_CONFIGURATION error during download.
	IMPORTANT: The default SRS of a new controller is 60000. You must use this to establish communications with the controller the first time. Once you establish communications, you can change the SRS.
Safety Time (ms)	the safety time (in milliseconds) for the controller.
	 The safety time is the time: the controller must react to an input signal with an output signal within which the controller must react to an error
	The default safety time is 2 times the default watchdog time. You can specify any time from 20 to 50000ms.
Watchdog Time (ms)	the maximum amount of time (in milliseconds) that the controller can take to execute one cycle.
	 The watchdog time must be: ≥ 10 ms ≤0.5 x Safety Time (Worst case, two cycles must occur within the Safety Time. Therefore, Safety Time ÷ 2 is the maximum watchdog time.) no more than 5000 ms.
	The default watchdog time is: • 500 ms for GuardPLC 1200 and GuardPLC 2000 • 50 ms for GuardPLC 1600 and GuardPLC 1800 • 10 ms for 1753-IB16, 1753-IB20XOB8, 1753-OB16
	If the controller exceeds the watchdog time, the controller goes into FAILURE_STOP.

This switch:	Specifies:	Default
Main Enable	whether CPU switches can be changed while the controller is executing.	On/Enabled
	If Main Enable is disabled, you cannot change the settings of the other 7 switches (described below) while the controller is in operation (routine in RUN).	
Autostart	whether the controller automatically starts up after rebooting the controller or applying power to the controller.	Off/Disabled
	If Autostart Enable is enabled, the routine automatically starts up after a reboot or applying power to the controller.	
Start/Restart allowed	whether you can start a routine manually.	On/Enabled
	If Start/Restart allowed is enabled, you can start a routine manually via the Routine menu of the Control Panel. Select either <i>Coldstart</i> or <i>Warmstart</i> . Coldstart is the recommended setting.	
	If Start/Restart allowed is disabled, you cannot start a routine manually. You can only start a routine by rebooting the controller or applying power to the controller.	
Loading allowed	whether you can load new configuration information to the controller.	On/Enabled
	If Loading allowed is disabled, no (new) configuration can be loaded into the controller. This prevents a user from overwriting the current routine.	
Test Mode allowed	whether you can freeze the routine.	Off/Disabled
	If Test Mode allowed is enabled, the routine currently running on the controller can be frozen. This allows the Test Mode with Single Cycle function. You are not allowed to freeze a routine in standard operation (this would be non-safe operation).	
Online Test allowed	whether you can monitor the Function Block code online.	Off/Disabled
Forcing allowed	whether you can force signals.	Off/Disabled
	If Forcing allowed is enabled, you can force the signals in the controller.	
	If Forcing allowed is disabled, you can still display the force editor, but the forcing functions are locked.	
Stop on Force Timeout	whether to stop forcing when the force time expires.	On/Enabled
	If Stop on Force Timeout is enabled, the controller terminates execution of the routine after the user-set force time expires. All outputs go to LOW.	
	If Stop on Force Timeout is disabled, the controller continues executing the routine with the process values when the force time expires.	
Max. Communication Time Slice	the time in milliseconds reserved for a controller to carry out and complete all communication tasks in one CPU cycle. This setting is required for Peer-to-Peer networking.	10 ms

You can set these switches:

	summarize the routine modes:		
Mode:	Description:		
RUN_RUN	 The controller is in the RUN mode. The routine is executed cyclically by the controller. Input data are processed in the routine. Output data of the routine are operated. 		
RUN_FREEZE	 The controller is in the RUN mode. The routine is not executed. No input data are processed. No output data of the routine are operated. 		
STOP	 The controller is in the STOP mode. The routine is no longer being executed. All outputs have been reset. 		
FAILURE_STOP	 The controller is in the STOP mode. The routine was stopped due an error. All outputs are reset. The hardware watchdog is not triggered. To recover from FAILURE_STOP, a reboot of the controller is necessary. A reboot can only be initiated via RSLogix Guard PLUS. See "Recovering From A FAILURE_STOP" on page 8-4. 		
TEST MODE (single step)	 The controller is in RUN mode. The routine is triggered manually. I/O data are processed. IMPORTANT: Test Mode is not permitted for safe operation! 		

Routine Modes

The controller runs only one routine. The following table and figure



Load a Configuration and Routine (in STOP mode only)

You can load a controller configuration and routine when:

- the controller is in STOP mode, and
- the controller *Loading allowed* switch is set.

The controller STOP mode is subdivided into these categories:

STOP Mode Category:	Description:
STOP_VALID_CONFIG	The configuration is correctly loaded. The controller can be set to RUN via a command from the programming software. This initiates a loaded user routine.
STOP_INVALID_CONFIG	No configuration loaded or the loaded configuration is faulty. The controller cannot go to RUN.
STOP_LOAD_CONFIG	loading configuration in process

The configuration and the routine are loaded together into the controller. Loading a new configuration and a new routine automatically deletes all previously loaded objects, even if the new objects are faulty.

IMPORTANT Configuration changes only take effect if you re-generate code before downloading to the controller.

If the controller is in STOP mode, the controller configuration and routine can also be deleted using the programming software's *Clear resource configuration* command. The controller goes into the STOP_INVALID CONFIGURATION mode.

Control Panel [GPLC1600_1]				
PADT Resource Communication Test Mode	Extra Help			
デ 沼 ト ■ 朝 1	Set <u>D</u> ate/Time			
Resource State Safety Parameters Stat	Change <u>S</u> ystem ID			
	Device Settings			
	Update OS 🔸			
	<u>R</u> eboot Resource			
	Load Resource Configuration from <u>F</u> lash			
	Clear Resource Configuration			
	Set <u>B</u> ackplane Type			

Test Mode of the Routine

In order to execute a single-step operation (cycle step), the controller must be in RUN mode. The *Test Mode allowed* switch must be set to on.

To enter Test mode, select the *Test Mode* menu from the control panel. Then select from *Hot Start, Warm Start,* or *Cold Start.*

i † Control Panel	Control Panel [GPLC1600_1]				
PADT Resource	Communication	Test Mode Extra Help			
<i>គ 1</i> ? 🕨 🖿	₫ 1	Enter Test Mode (<u>H</u> ot Start)			
Resource State	Safety Parame	Enter Test Mode (<u>W</u> arm Start)			
	,	Enter Test Mode (<u>C</u> old Start)			
		1 Single Cycle			
		Continue with <u>R</u> un			

The controller state changes to Freeze, and you can now single cycle the routine using the *Single Cycle* option on the *Test Mode* menu. To return to normal operation, select *Continue with Run*.

See "Testing a Routine" on page 6-5 for more information.
Monitoring and Forcing Signals

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
monitoring signals	9-1
forcing	9-3
enabling forces	9-4
starting the force editor	9-4
force time	9-6
specifying force values and force marks	9-5
starting forces	9-7
stopping forces	9-8

Monitoring Signals

The Force Editor provides a window that lets you select signals to monitor, whether they are forced or not.

 Right-click on the resource. Select Online → Force Editor. If the Control Panel is already open, you do not have to login. Otherwise, the software asks you to log in.



2. After you successfully log in, the software displays the Force Editor.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Mar	agement	<u>_ ×</u>
Project Edit Signals Online Windows H	elp	
Erotex tox gut as gut	Py Force Editor [Resource] Ele Yew Options Help J Start Stap Takeover Configure Send Export Import Append Resource Forcing activated Force Time Sec. Forcing alowed Remaining Force Time co. Solution Soluti	
	Signals I//O-Channels Signal Force F Type R-Value R-Force RF	
×	jonine jadm National (Kesous (9) , ×)	nistrator
03/21/2004 11:09:49:588, Info: Thesource 03/21/2004 11:09:53:503, Info: Thesource 03/21/2004 11:09:55.46, Info: Thesource 03/21/2004 11:09:56.247, Info: Thesource 03/21/2004 11:09:56.247, Info: Thesource	r resource grant scannerski dogod o kontrol dogod o kontrol Resource successfully labyed All lites uccessfully labyed to resource Resource Englised ion successfully labyed Resource Study stated.	•

3. In the Force Editor, select *Configure*. The software displays a list of force signals you can select whether to view or not.

💋 Select signals to View	v	×
Signal	Туре	
Circuit_Reset	BOOL	
Cycle_Inputs	BOOL	
EStop_ch1	BOOL	
☑ EStop_ch2	BOOL	
✓ Fault_Reset	BOOL	
🗹 Input_Fault	BOOL	
✓ Lamp_Test	BOOL	
🗆 Lamp3	BOOL	
🗆 Output	BOOL	
D Pulse_Test_Fault	BOOL	•
<u>O</u> K Select	all Clearall	<u>C</u> ancel

4. If you are not already connected, in the Force Editor, select *File* \rightarrow *Connect*. The software displays the values of the signals you selected.



You have the ability to force any of the signals that have been configured in the Force Editor.

Forcing

Forcing describes the intervention of the user in the logic of the user program loaded into the controller. When data is forced, the controller uses the forced values rather than its process values. This changes the value of one or more signals and affects the safety of the controller.

Only signals used in the controller can be forced. The user program and the inputs and outputs are only affected when the controller is in RUN mode.



When using forcing on a controller with safety tasks, always obey the restrictions listed in the *GuardPLC Controller Systems Safety Reference Manual*, publication 1755-RM001.

Enabling Forces

To enable forcing, both the *Forcing allowed* and *Main Enable* switches must be set. The *Forcing allowed* switch can be set via the programming software, but only if the controller is in RUN or STOP mode.

A forced value remains saved in the controller until:

- the user program is stopped,
- the force value is replaced by another value, or
- the controller is switched off.
- TIP

If a new configuration is loaded, all of the force switches and associated force values are reset.

Starting the Force Editor

Any user can start the Force Editor, regardless of access privilege. However, you can only force signals if *Forcing allowed* is enabled for the controller. Forcing is always disabled for users with Read access.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Mana	igeme	nt								
Project Edit Signals Online Windows He	lp									
🖻 - 🏗 CAT4E stop										
🕂 📕 Configuration		📝 Force	Editor [Resource]							-DX
E- 🔀 [60000] Resource		<u>File Viev</u>	w Options Help							
E- Distributed I/O		Start	Stop Takeover Confid	ure Send	E	xport Im	port Append			
Protocols		Resource	Besource		-	<u> </u>				
TypeInstance			, jirosodioo							
		Forc	ing activated Force Tir	ne [_		0 sec.			
[CPU [→[1]D0 8		Force	ing allowed Remainin	g Force Time	_		0 sec.			
		🔽 Stop	on Timeout							
		Signals	1/0-Channels							
HH-Network_1			Signal	Force	F	Туре	R-Value	R-Force	BF	
- O Token Group		1	EStop_ch1	FALSE		BOOL	TRUE	FALSE		
		2	EStop_ch2	FALSE		BOOL	TRUE	FALSE		
		3	Fault_Reset	FALSE		BOOL	FALSE	FALSE		
		4	Input_Fault	FALSE		BOOL	FALSE	FALSE		
		5	Lamp_Test	FALSE		BOOL	FALSE	FALSE		
	-							k	nline	Administrator
	<mark>∎</mark> ≨Co	introl Par	nel [Resou] di [Li]X							

Before you start the Force Editor, make sure the program running in the controller is the same program that you are editing in RSLogix Guard PLUS software. To verify whether these programs are the same, start the Control Panel and select *Resource* \rightarrow *Check Consistency*. If the offline/online programs are not identical then the Force Editor will come up offline.

Specifying Force Values and Force Marks

To set a signal with a force value, you:

1. Enter the force value for the signal in the *Force* column.



For Boolean signals, "True" or "False" and "1" or "0" are acceptable values.

- **2.** Double-click in the *F* column to mark that you want the controller to use the force value rather than the process value.
- **3.** Send the force value(s) to the controller. The Force Editor displays the force value(s) in the *R*-*Force* column. A mark in the *RF (resource force)* column indicates that the controller will use the corresponding force value instead of the process value when forcing is enabled.

Multiple force values can be written into the controller at the same time. The force values remain saved in the controller until the routine is reloaded. If the routine is stopped, the resource force marks are also reset.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Manageme Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help	ent								_ 🗆 🗵
Cori 4£ stop	Force Editor [Resource] Force Time Forcing activated Force Time Forcing allowed Remaining Force Time Stop on Timeout Signals //O-Channels								
Er HH-Network_1	Signal 1 EStop_ch1 2 EStop_ch2 3 Fault_Reset 4 Input Fault		Force F Type FALSE BOOL FALSE BOOL FALSE BOOL FALSE BOOL		R-Value TRUE TRUE FALSE	FALSE FALSE FALSE TRUE	FALSE FALSE FALSE TBUE		
	5 Lan	np_Test	1	~	BOOL	FALSE	TRUE	v Admin	istrator
(32/2/2004 11/3002/406, Info (Resource) Resource (33/2/2004 11/31/31/8, Error: Resource) Resource (33/2/2004 11/11/31/8, Error: Resource) Timete (33/2/2004 11/11/31/8, Error: Frore Monotomy fo (33/2/2004 11/11/11/8, Error: Frore Monotomy fo (33/2/2004 11/11/11/8, Error: Frore Monotomy fo (33/2/2004 11/11/11/11/8, Error: Frore Monotomy fo (33/2/2004 11/11/11/11/11/11/11/11/11/11/11/11/11/	introl Panel (rce congorator rce successfully ut monitoring for alled ut monitoring for alled	Resour by L X							

Field:	Description:
Signal	the name of the signal you want to force.
Force	the value you want to force the signal to have.
	The value you enter must match the type displayed in the <i>Type</i> field.
F (force mark)	a check in this field identifies that the force value you entered is sent to and saved in the controller and will become active when forcing is active.
	Double-click in this column to mark that you want the controller to use this force value rather than the controller's process value.
Туре	displays the type of the signal, as defined in the signal Editor.
R-Value (resource value)	displays the controller value, resulting from the current process and program logic.
R-Force (resource force value)	displays the value of the signal while forcing is active.
RF (resource force mark)	a check in this field identifies that the controller is using the force value rather than the process value as soon as forcing is active.

Force Time

The force time is monitored by the controller. To enter the force time in seconds, the controller must be in RUN or STOP mode with *Forcing allowed* set. For unlimited forcing activity, enter -1.

The force time begins when the force process starts. The time is reset to 0 if a new configuration is loaded or if the operating voltage is disconnected.

After the specified time, forcing activity ends. If the controller switch *Stop on Force Timeout* is enabled, the routine returns to STOP mode when forcing ends. If *Stop on Force Timeout* is disabled, the routine continues with the current process values once forcing ends.

Starting Forces

- **1.** To start forces, select the *Start*... tab or select *File* \rightarrow *Start* (see the arrow below).
- 2. The Force Time dialog box appears. Enter the Force Time.

🌽 Start forcing			×
Force Time	0	sec.	
Start			Cancel

3. The Force Editor opens.

	RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Manage Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help	ement							
	Configuration Config	Force Editor [Resource] Ele Yew Options Help Stat Stgp Takeover Configure Send Export Import Append Hesource Forcing activated Force Time Forcing allowed Remaining Force Time Stop on Timeout Stop o							
	E- HH-Network_1		Signal	Force	F Type	R-Value	R-Force	RF	
	- O Token Group	1	EStop_ch1	FALSE	BOOL	TRUE	FALSE		
/		2	EStop_ch2	FALSE	BOOL	TRUE	FALSE		
		3	Fault_Reset	FALSE	BOOL	FALSE	FALSE		
		4	Input_Fault	TRUE	✓ BOOL	TRUE	TRUE	•	
		5	Lamp_Test	1	BOOL BOOL BOOL Second S	FALSE	TRUE	✓	
							o	nline Adminis	trator
		5 Control Par	nel [Resouฮา 🗆 🗙						

Once forcing starts, the *Forcing activated* box is checked and R-Force values take precedence over R-Values.

Stopping Forces

To stop forcing, select the *Stop*... tab or select *File* \rightarrow *Stop*.



Once forcing is stopped, the Forcing activated check box is cleared. However, the Resource Force Mark *(RF)* field is still checked, indicating that force values remain in the resource, but are inactive.

Access Management

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
how the controller uses access levels	10-1
creating user access	10-2

How the Controller Uses Access Levels

An Administrator can set up access privileges for a maximum of ten users per controller. The controller stores the access privileges in its non-volatile memory. The access privileges are not saved with the program, and are not downloaded to the controller with the program. If the controller is changed, access privileges must be re-entered manually.

Every controller has the same default user account, which applies when the controller is:

- new, out of the box
- after disconnecting the operating voltage with the backup battery removed (GuardPLC 1200/2000 only)
- utilizing the Reset button (GuardPLC 1600/1800 only) See "Reset Pushbutton" on page 2-13.

The default account is:

Username:	Administrator
Password:	<blank></blank>
Access Type:	Administrator

This access level:	Allows:
Administrator	 highest privileges manage usernames and passwords read data from controller write routines and data into controller force tags stop, start, freeze, and force a routine download an operating system reboot the controller change IP address and system ID can also login under read/write and read levels
Read/Write	 read data from controller write routines and data into controller force tags start, stop, freeze, and force a routine can also login under read level
Read	lowest privilegesonly read data from controller

The following access levels are available:

Creating User Access

To create a user access level:

1. Select *Online* →*Access Management*. If the Control Panel is open, you do not have to login. Otherwise, the software asks you to log in.



Access Management [GPLC1600_1] - D × Communication Access Help 🐔 💹 🧖 User name Password Password verification Access type No access No access No access

2. After you successfully log in with Administrator access, the software displays the Access Management window.

	4	4		*****	*****	No access	
	3	5		*****	*****	No access	
	6	6		******	******	No access	
		7		*****	*****	No access	
	8	3		*******	******	No access	
	5	Э		******	*****	No access	
		10		******	******	No access	
					Or	line Administrator	
Field:	Description:						
Username	name of the user.						
Password	password of the u	user.					
	The password is o	case	sensitive.				
Password Verification	verify the passwo	ord sp	ecified above	-			
Access Type	the access level of	of the	user.				
	Specify Administr	rator,	Read/Write, I	Read, or No A	CCESS.		

The username and password are case sensitive and can contain as many as 31 characters. You can use letters, numbers and underscore (_) characters.

At least one of the users must have Administrator privileges.

If you make changes to the user list, use the Set Accounts button to save the changes in the controller.

The Administrator can delete access privileges of all users with the default account access and reset the Administrator account to the default setting of "Administrator" and no password (blank).

IMDODTANT	Changes to access privileges can only be executed
	when the controller is in the state STOP
	when the controller is in the state 5101.
	when the controller is in the state 5101.

If battery and external power to the controller are simultaneously off, the controller loses all account information and reverts to the default account.

Diagnostics

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
viewing diagnostics	11-1
GuardPLC 1200 LED description	11-4
GuardPLC 1600 and 1800 controllers and I/O LED descriptions	11-5
GuardPLC 2000 LED descriptions	11-7
1755-IB24XOB16 digital combination input and output module (AB-DIO) LED descriptions	11-9
1775-IF8 analog input module (AB-AI) LED descriptions	11-10
1775-OF8 analog output module (AB-AO) LED descriptions	11-11
1775-HSC combination high-speed counter and output module (AB-CO) LED descriptions	11-11

Viewing Controller Diagnostics

The controller stores short term and long term diagnostics data. The number of entries the controller can save depends on the controller, as shown below:

Type of Data:	GuardPLC 1200		GuardPLC 1600 and 1800		GuardPLC 2000	
	CPU:	COM:	CPU:	COM:	CPU:	COM:
number of short term entries	60	700	60	700	300	700
number of long term entries	250	200	250	200	1000	200

If the memory for short term entries is full and the controller needs to log another entry, the controller deletes the oldest entry.

If the memory for the long term entries is full and the controller needs to add a new entry, the controller deletes the oldest entry only if that entry is more than 7 days old. Otherwise, the new entry is rejected and a message is displayed in the diagnostics window.

1. To display the diagnostics window, left-click on the Resource and select *Online →Diagnostics*. If the Control Panel is already open, you do not have to login. Otherwise, the software asks you to log in.



2. After you successfully log in, the software displays the controller diagnostics.

Piag	nostic [GPLC1600_1]				- D ×
Diagnos	tic Help				
🛋 🙎	🐒 🚰 🚺 🔸 🕨				
C Start	At Oldest Entry	☐ Sort			
 Start 	At Newest Entry	🔽 CPU Short Term Diagnostic			
C Start	At Date 01/01/2000	13:00 CPU Long Term Diagnostic			
C Stop	At Date J01/18/2038	15:14 I CUM Short Term Diagnostic			
🖲 Entrie	es Per Diag. 🛛 🗍 븆	🥅 COM Long Term Diagnostic			
Level	Date	Text	Origin	Туре	Parameters 🔺
INFO	03/09/2004 11:54:55.227	CPU TRANSITION >>> INITIALIZING to STOP	CPU	LT	[0x2aa(682), (
INFO	03/09/2004 11:54:55.221	CPU State >>> INITIALIZING	CPU	LT	[0x17f(383), 0
INFO	03/03/2004 16:16:49.859	IOT >>> State of current changed. [New state current:0x00000000]	CPU	LT	[0x49e(1182), 1
INFO	03/03/2004 16:16:49.842	IOT >>> State of current changed. [New state current:0x00000005]	CPU	LT	[0x49e(1182),
INFO	03/03/2004 16:16:49.670	IOT >>> State of current changed. [New state current:0x00000001]	CPU	LT	[0x49e(1182),
INFO	03/03/2004 16:08:12.000	Received command >> Set system time << done	CPU	LT	[0x844(2116),
INFO	01/31/2000 03:55:11.946	CFG: Received command: >> set Date/Time (1078351692 [sec], 0 [ms]) <<	CPU	LŢ	10x820(2080)
					<u>}</u>
					Online

This field:	Displays:	
Level	whether the entry is INFO, WARNING, or ERROR.	
Date	the date and time the entry was recorded.	
Text	a description of the cause leading to the entry.	
Origin	whether the cause of entry originated from the CPU or COM.	
Туре	whether the entry is short term (ST) or long term (LT).	
Parameter	information direct from the CPU or COM. This data is only for error analysis by Rockwell Automation representatives.	

TIP

You can export diagnostic data to a text file for storage by selecting *Export* from the *Diagnostic* menu.

Selecting Online or Offline Diagnostics

When you start the diagnostics window, Diag. Online is automatically activated. This signals that you want all diagnostics data transferred from the controller to the diagnostics buffer in RSLogix Guard PLUS software. As long as Diag. Online is active, new diagnostic data is transferred to this buffer as it becomes available and if the filter you selected applies.

Diag. Offline disconnects communication with the controller. This ends the transmission of diagnostic data from the controller to the diagnostics buffer in RSLogix Guard PLUS software.

Filtering Diagnostic Data

Select from these filters to determine what diagnostic data to display:

Filter:	Description:
Start At Oldest Entry	Displays all the data from the RSLogix Guard PLUS buffer starting with the oldest entry.
	The number of lines shown in the table depends on the Entries Per Diag. Enable Sorting defaults to disabled so that the data appears in chronological order from oldest to newest.
Start At Newest Entry	Displays all the data from the RSLogix Guard PLUS buffer starting with the newest entry.
	The number of lines shown in the table depends on the Entries Per Diag. Enable Sorting defaults to disabled so that the data appears in chronological order from oldest to newest.
Start At Date	Displays entries in chronological order starting at this date and time. The number of lines shown in the table depends on the Entries Per Diag. Enter the date as mm/dd/yy and the time as hh:mm.
Stop At Date	Displays entries in chronological order ending at this date and time. The number of lines shown in the table depends on the Entries Per Diag. Enter the date as mm/dd/yy and the time as hh:mm.
Entries Per Diag.	Determines the maximum number of entries to load into the buffer for the CPU and COM diagnostics.
	For example, if you enable short term and long term diagnostics for CPU and COM and you set Entries Per Diag. = 10, the diagnostic window contains a maximum of 40 entries (10 entries per diagnostic type).
	RSLogix Guard PLUS can buffer as many as 5000 entries per type of diagnostic.
Sort	If Sort is disabled, the diagnostic window displays entries in the order they were saved in the controller.
	If Sort is enabled, the diagnostic window automatically displays entries according to date.
CPU Short Term Diagnostic CPU Long Term Diagnostic	Enables or disables whether to display the diagnostic data for each type.
COM Short Term Diagnostic COM Long Term Diagnostic	

GuardPLC 1200 LEDs

The GuardPLC1200 controller has these LED indicators:



Indicator	State	Condition	
INput	On	Digital input channels are high (10 to 30V dc).	
	Off	Digital input channels are off.	
OUTput	On	Digital output channels are high.	
	Off	Digital output channels are off.	
RUN	On	This is the normal status of the controller.	
		A routine, which has been loaded into the controller, is executed. The controller processes input and output signals, carries out communication, and performs hardware and software tests.	
	Blink	The controller is in STOP mode and is not executing a routine.	
		All system outputs are reset.	
		STOP mode can be triggered by setting the system variable "AB-CPU/Emergency Stop" to TRUE in the routine, or by direct command from the programming terminal.	
	Off	The controller is in FAILURE_STOP (see ERROR).	
ERROR	On	 A hardware error has been detected by the controller. In this case the controller goes to FAILURE_STOP and the execution of the routine is halted. Hardware errors are errors in the controller, in one or more of the digital input and output modules, or in the counters. A software error in the operating system has been detected by the controller. The watchdog has reported an error because of exceeded cycle time. 	
		All system outputs will be reset and the controller ceases all hardware and software tests. The controller can only be restarted by a command from the programming terminal.	
	Blink	If all the LEDs are on and ERROR blinks, the boot loader detected a corrupted operating system and is waiting for an operating system download.	
	Off	No errors are detected.	
PROGress	On	The upload of a new controller configuration is in progress.	
	Blink	The upload of a new operating system into the Flash ROM is in progress.	
	Off	No upload of controller configuration or operating system is in progress.	
FORCE	On	The controller is executing a routine (RUN) and FORCE mode is activated by the user.	
	Blink	The controller is in STOP, but forcing has been saved and will be activated when the controller is started.	
	Off	Forcing is off.	

Indicator	State	Condition
FAULT On The routir		The routine logic has caused an error.
		The controller configuration is faulty.
		The upload of a new operating system was not successful and the operating system is corrupted.
	Blink	An error has occurred during a Flash ROM write cycle.
		One or more I/O errors have occurred.
	Off	None of the above errors have been detected.
COMMunication	On	The programming terminal, with Administrator or Read/Write access, is communicating with the controller via an Ethernet link.
	Off	No communication or read-only communication on an Ethernet link.

GuardPLC 1600 and GuardPLC 1800 Controllers and GuardPLC Distributed I/O

System LEDs

0	24V DC
0	RUN
0	ERROR
0	PROG
0	FORCE
0	FAULT
0	OSL
0	BL

Indicator	State	Condition	
24V dc	On	24V dc operating voltage present.	
	Off	No operating voltage.	
RUN	Image: Number of the status Image: Number of the status <t< td=""></t<>		
	Flashing	he controller is in STOP mode and is not executing a routine. Il system outputs are reset. STOP mode can be triggered by setting the <i>Emergency stop</i> system variable to TRUE in the routine, or y direct command from the programming software.	
	Off	The controller is in FAILURE_STOP (see ERROR).	
ERROR On A hardware error has been detected by execution of the routine is halted. Hardware digital input and output modules, or		A hardware error has been detected by the controller. The controller goes to FAILURE_STOP and the execution of the routine is halted. Hardware errors are errors in the controller, errors in one or more of the digital input and output modules, or errors in the counters.	
		A software error in the operating system has been detected by the controller.	
		The watchdog has reported an error due to exceeded cycle time.	
		All system outputs will be reset and the controller ceases all hardware and software tests. The controller can only be restarted by a command from the programming software.	
	Off	No errors are detected.	

Indicator	State	Condition
PROGress	On	The upload of a new controller configuration is in progress.
	Flashing	The upload of a new operating system into the Flash ROM is in progress.
	Off	No upload of controller configuration or operating system in progress.
FORCE On The controller is executing a r		The controller is executing a routine (RUN) and FORCE mode is activated by the user.
	Flashing	The controller is in STOP, but Forcing has been initiated and will be activated when the controller is started.
	Off	Forcing is OFF.
FAULT	On	The routine (logic) has caused an error.
		The controller configuration is faulty.
		The upload of a new operating system was not successful and the operating system is corrupted.
	Flashing	An error has occurred during a Flash ROM write cycle.
		One or more I/O errors have occurred.
	Off	None of the above errors has occurred.
OSL	Flashing	Emergency Operating System Loader is active.
BL	Flashing	Boot Loader unable to load operating system or unable to start COMM operating system loader.

Communication LEDs

Safety-Related GuardPLC Ethernet

Communication via GuardPLC Ethernet is indicated via two small LEDs integrated into each RJ-45 connector socket.

Indicator	State	Condition
Green	On	Full duplex operation
	Flashing	Collision
	Off	Half duplex operation, no collision
Yellow	On	Connection established
	Flashing	Interface activity

Non-Safety-Related Communication

Active communication via the serial ports, COMM1 and COMM3, is indicated by an LED located above the port.

GuardPLC 2000 LEDs

The GuardPLC2000 controller has LED indicators for:

- module, both the program and the communication
- controller and the system hardware
- routine
- Ethernet communication to the programming terminal

Controller Indicators

LED	Status	Explanation	
RUN	ON	This is the normal status of the controller (RUN or STOP mode).	
		The controller carries out communication and performs software tests.	
	BLINK	Downloading an Operating System	
	OFF	The controller is in FAILURE_STOP (see LED ERR below), or there is no power supply.	
ERR	ON	The controller is in the FAILURE_STOP state and the execution of the routine is halted. All system outputs will be reset and the controller ceases all hardware and software tests.	
		The operating system loader has found a flash error (FAULT is blinking).	
	BLINK	The boot loader has found an error in the operating system in the flash (if all other LEDs are ON); the download of a new operating system is awaited.	
	OFF	No errors are detected.	





Routine Indicators

LED	Status	Explanation	
RUN	ON	The routine is in RUN or FREEZE.	
	OFF	The routine is in FAILURE_STOP.	
STOP	ON	The routine is in STOP or FAILURE_STOP.	
PROG	ON	The download of a new controller configuration is in progress.	
	BLINK	The download of a new operating system into the flash ROM is in progress.	
	OFF	No download of controller configuration or operating system is in progress.	
FAULT	The routine (user program) has caused an error.		
		The controller configuration is faulty.	
		The download of a new operating system was not successful and the operating system is corrupted.	
	BLINK	An error has occurred during a flash ROM write cycle of the operating system.	
		At least one I/O module error is present.	
	OFF	No errors have been detected.	
FORCE	ON	The controller is executing a routine (RUN) and one or more inputs and/or outputs may be forced by the user.	
	BLINK	The controller is in STOP, but one or more inputs and/or outputs have been prepared for forcing and will be activated as soon as the controller is started.	
	OFF	No inputs and/or outputs are forced or are prepared to be forced.	

Ethernet Communication Indicators

LED	Status	Explanation
Тх	On	Data is transmitting via Ethernet by the communication processor.
COL	On	A collision on Ethernet is detected.





1755-IB24X0B16 LEDs



Serial Communication Indicators

LED	Status	Explanation	
FB1	On	Field bus no. 1 is active	
FB2	On	Field bus no. 2 is active (serial interface module)	

IMPORTANT

Only the bottom serial port on the GuardPLC 2000 controller is active, as indicated by the FB2 LED.

The 1755-IB24XOB16 digital combination input and output module (AB-DIO) has LED indicators for:

- power supply
- module status
- I/O status

Power Supply and Module Status

LED	Status	Explanation
RUN	ON (green)	The module has the correct operating voltage (24V dc).
	OFF	The module has no power.
ERR	ON (red)	If the system is in STOP mode, one or more of the inputs or outputs is faulty, or the module is faulty.
	1	Use the RSLogix Guard PLUS software to verify the location of the fault. If the module is faulty, replace the module immediately, or the safety-related operation of the GuardPLC 2000 controller is not maintained.
	OFF	The module is operational.

I/O Status

Status	Explanation
ON (yellow)	Input is highOutput is energized
OFF	Input is lowOutput is de-energized

While the system is in RUN mode, ERR is indicated continuously for both a module and a channel error. Depending on the type of error, the module switches off only a faulty output channel, but the operation of the other outputs continues, or all the output channels are switched off. The inputs are always in operation. A faulty input channel transmits Low-signal to the logic. If the entire module is switched off, all input and output channels are switched off.

The 1755-IF8 analog input module (AB-AI) has LED indicators for:

- power supply
- module status

LED	Status	Explanation
RUN	ON (green)	The module has the correct operating voltage (24V dc).
	OFF	The module has no power.
ERR	ON (red)	If the system is in STOP mode, one or more of the inputs or outputs is faulty, or the module is faulty.
		Use the RSLogix Guard PLUS software to verify the location of the fault. If the module is faulty, replace the module immediately, or the safety-related operation of the GuardPLC 2000 controller is not maintained.
	OFF	The module is operational.

While the system is in RUN mode, ERR is indicated continuously for both a module and a input channel error. Depending on the type of error, the module may switch off only one input channel (i.e., a faulty channel transmits the value 0 to the logic, but the module continues operation with the remaining channels). If the entire module is switched off, all input channels transmit the value 0 to the logic.

1755-IF8 Analog Input Module LEDs



1755-OF8 Analog Output Module LEDs



The 1755-OF8 analog output module (AB-AO) has LED indicators for:

- power supply
- module status

LED	Status	Explanation
RUN	ON (green)	The module has the correct operating voltage (24V dc).
	OFF	The module has no power.
ERR ON (red) If the s		If the system is in STOP mode, one or more of the inputs or outputs is faulty or the module is faulty.
		Use the RSLogix Guard PLUS software to verify the location of the fault. If the module is faulty, replace the module immediately or the safety-related operation of the GuardPLC 2000 controller is not maintained.
	OFF	The module is operational.

While the system is in RUN mode, ERR is indicated continuously for both a module and an output channel error. Depending on the type of error, the module may switch only one pair of output channels (1+2, ..., 7+8) to the de-energized state (i.e. the value 0V or 0 mA), but the module continues operation with the remaining channels. If the entire module is switched off, all output channels are switched to the de-energized state.

1755-HSC Combination High-Speed Counter and Output Module LEDs

The 1755-HSC combination high-speed counter and output module (AB-CO) has LED indicators for:

- power supply
- module status
- I/O status

Power Supply and Module Status



19		
20	O_2^{\perp}	
22	Ŏ3	
23	O 4	
24	L-	

T

LED Status		Explanation	
RUN	ON (green)	The module has the correct operating voltage (24V dc).	
	OFF	The module has no power.	
ERR	ON (red)	If the system is in STOP mode, one or more of the inputs or outputs is faulty or the module is faulty.	
		Use the RSLogix Guard PLUS software to verify the location of the fault. If the module is faulty, replace the module immediately or the safety-related operation of the GuardPLC 2000 controller is not maintained.	
	OFF	The module is operational.	

I/O Status

LED	Status	Explanation
1, 2, 3, 4ON (green)The corresponding output is energized.		The corresponding output is energized.
	OFF	The corresponding output is de-energized.

While the system is in RUN mode, ERR is indicated continuously for both a module and a counter channel error. Depending on the type of error, the module may switch off only one counter channel (i.e., the counter transmits the value 0 to the logic, the output has no signal, but the module continues operation with the remaining counter channel). If the entire module is switched off, all counter channels are switched off.

Peer-to-Peer Communication Overview

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
Peer-to-Peer communication basics	12-1
network configuration	12-3
networking limitations	12-2
High-Level High-Speed protocol parameters	12-3
Peer-to-Peer protocol parameters	12-6
High-Level High-Speed network profiles	12-10
Peer-to-Peer network profiles	12-17

Peer-to-Peer Communication Basics

Peer-to-Peer communication is used for data exchange between two or more controllers and distributed I/O on a GuardPLC safe Ethernet network. GuardPLC Ethernet is certified for use in SIL3 and CAT 4 applications and is designed to carry safety-related data. The controllers are usually connected via Ethernet, but other means of communication, such as telephone lines or two-way radios are also possible, using gateways from Ethernet to the respective technology.

The Peer-to-Peer protocol is primarily responsible for:

- the communication between controller CPUs, including automatic connection setup
- extended diagnostics
- all safety-relevant features for correct data transfer

Each controller is equipped with one or more 10/100 Base T Ethernet ports. The High-Level High-Speed (HH) protocol is implemented in the operating system of the GuardPLC 1200/1600/1800 and GuardPLC 2000 communication module (COM) and interacts with the Ethernet port. The HH protocol is based on UDP/IP and IEEE 802.3 standards and is responsible for the collision-free data exchange via standard Ethernet in various network topologies. As seen in the figure below, both the HH and the Peer-to-Peer protocols are vital for safe Ethernet Communication. HH protocol can be considered the wire or transport media through which messages are passed. Peer-to-Peer (P2P) is the protocol that runs on the wire, making sure that the messages are transmitted over the HH connection within the watchdog time. P2P is the mechanism that qualifies GuardPLC Ethernet as a safety network.



TIP

The Peer-to-Peer protocol is designated as a safe protocol according to DIN V 19250(AK6), IEC61508 (SIL 3) and EN 954-1 (CAT 4) respectively.

Networking Limitations

A peer-to-peer link is defined as communication from one GuardPLC to another GuardPLC, or from a GuardPLC to a distributed I/O block. A device on an Ethernet network must make a connection to another device on the Ethernet network in order for the two of them to communicate. Connections only need to be established between devices that wish to communicate with each other.

A single GuardPLC controller may have up to 64 connections to other devices on the GuardPLC Ethernet network (GuardPLC controllers, GuardPLC Distributed I/O Blocks, OPC servers, or programming terminals). Each connection can transfer up to 900 Bytes of data in each direction (read and write). The data size is determined by the number of signals transferred between the devices.

In contrast, a GuardPLC Distributed I/O block can only have one connection, the connection to the controller that 'owns' it. The amount of data shared between a DIO block and the controller is fixed and defined by the type of I/O block.

The total number of controllers, DIO blocks, OPC servers, and programming terminals on a network is only limited by the number of available IP addresses and the network bandwidth (max 100 Mbits per second) of a segment of the network. However, large amounts of data flowing on the network will affect the network response time, and therefore the safety time of the system. **Network Configuration** Communication between GuardPLC controllers can be established via different kinds of Ethernet topologies. Both the HH protocol and the Peer-to-Peer protocol can be adapted to the network in use, to allow smooth and efficient data transfer.

You configure the HH protocol and the Peer-to-Peer protocol by setting parameters, either manually or with the help of network profiles. Network profiles are preset combinations of parameters you can select to make configuration simpler.

To optimize data transfer and customize the configuration, you must have an extensive knowledge of the network in use and the operation of the parameters. The following sections summarize the most important HH and Peer-to-Peer protocol parameters.

HH Protocol Parameters

The HH protocol parameters are displayed in the HH Network/Token Group window. They can be preset by selecting one of two profiles:

- Fast
- Medium

The profiles are explained in HH Network Profiles on page 12-10.

TIP

While manual changes to the parameters are possible by selecting the "None" profile, keep in mind that ill-considered changes can disable communication completely.

/HH-Network_1/Token Group						
Туре		Token Group				
Name		Token Group				
Profile		Medium				
Token Group ID		1				
Protocol Mode		Normal				
Link Mode		TCS TOKCYC 🗾				
Response Time [ms]		16				
Bus Cycle Time [ms]		40				
Token Alive Timeout [ms]		20				
Primary Timeout [ms]		400				
Secondary Interval [ms]		200				
Link Mode (Extern)		TCS TOKCYC 🔽				
Response Time (external) [ms] 16						
<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel	el <u>A</u> pply <u>H</u> elp				

Token Group ID

The Token Group ID is the numerical identifier for a Token Group. Each Token Group must have its unique ID.

Protocol Mode

Choose either Normal or RAW protocol mode.

Normal

In Normal mode, software token passing is ON, meaning that access to the Ethernet network is controlled via token passing. Only the controller that holds the token is allowed to access the network.

This mode is recommended for networks with slow hubs to avoid message collisions.

RAW

In RAW mode, software token passing is OFF. No token is created. Ethernet access is coordinated by hardware only. The affiliated Link Mode is "TCS direct".

Data transfer is faster than in "Normal Mode" and message collisions are prevented by the switching and full-duplex mode ports.

This mode is recommended for networks, where full-duplex (recommended) LAN-switches are used exclusively, or the switches integrated into the GuardPLC 1600 and 1800 can be used.

Link Mode

Select either TCS Direct or TCS TOKCYC.

TCS Direct

In TCS Direct mode, safety-related data are sent as soon as they are prepared for transmission. Network media access is coordinated by hardware.

TCS TOKCYC

This Link Mode corresponds to Protocol Mode "Normal". Safety-related data are sent when the controller receives the token. Network media access is coordinated by software.

Response Time

Response Time is the controller's maximum permissible Response Time for a network message. PES_1 (Programmable Electronic System₁) sends a message to PES_2 and expects the answer within the Response Timeout.

The actual values of the ResponseTime can be read in the HH Status of the Control Panel.

	Controller	LinkId	Status	RspT last [ms]	RspT avg [ms]	RspT max [ms]	RspT min [ms]
1	GPLC1200_2	2	connected	2	2	2	2
2	GPLC2000_1	3	connected	3	3	3	3

Token Cycle Time

This is the maximum permissible time for one token cycle. In other words, the time within which a controller expects the token.

The Token Cycle Time depends on the number of controllers in a Token Group and can be read in the HH Status of the Control Panel.

		last	avg	max	min
1	Token Cycle Time	11	8	36	5

Token Alive Timeout

The current holder of the token must send a token alive message to the Primary⁽¹⁾ controller within this time period or the Primary assumes the token is bad. If the token alive message is missing, a new token is created by the Primary.

(1) The Primary is the controller that generates and supervises the token.

Primary Timeout

Time, within which the Primary expects a check for liveliness from the Secondary⁽¹⁾ controller. If the liveliness check fails to appear, the Primary assumes that the present Secondary is disconnected. In this case, the Primary selects a new Secondary.

Secondary Interval

Time, after which the Secondary checks the Primary for liveliness. The Secondary Interval is less than the Primary Timeout.

Link Mode (Extern)

Same as Link Mode above, except for the connection is to a controller in another Token Group.

Response Time (Extern)

Same as Response Timeout above, except for the connection is to a controller in another Token Group.

Peer-to-Peer Protocol Parameters

All Peer-to-Peer protocol parameters are displayed in the Peer-to-Peer Editor. With the exception of the ResponseTime and the ReceiveTMO, which have to be configured by the user, all other Peer-to-Peer protocol parameters are automatically preset with the selection of a Peer-to-Peer profile. See "Configure Peer-to-Peer Communication" on page 13-11 for detailed instructions on how to configure the Peer-to-Peer protocol.

Message Response Time (ReponseTime)

ResponseTime is the user-configurable time it takes to receive an acknowledgement of a sent message from the recipient.

The ResponseTime is not a freely configurable parameter, but results from the physical conditions of the communication path and the configuration of the network protocol.

Because the ResponseTime influences the speed of message exchange, a test run is recommended to investigate network timing.

Use the *P2P Status* tab, in the Control Panel to display the minimum, maximum, and average ResponseTime.

Statistics P	2P Status H	H Status En	vironment Op
RspT last [ms]	RspT avg (ms)	RspT min [ms]	RspT max [ms]
29	23	10	55
12	24	10	55

The ResponseTime is the sum of the following variables, described in the table below:

ResponseTime = $T_{GR1} + T_1 + T_{GR2} + T_3 + T_2$

Table 12.1 Response Time Variables

Variable:	Definition:
T _{GR1}	Message delay between two PES: $CPU_1 \rightarrow COM_1 \rightarrow network \rightarrow COM_2 \rightarrow CPU_2$
T ₁	Time on CPU_2 to process all protocol stacks: $T_1 = CycleTime(CPU_2) \times n_2$ where n_2 is the number of cycles needed on CPU_2 to process all protocol stacks. Set the Communication Time Slice (see below) large enough to allow all protocol stacks to be processed in one cycle.
T ₂	Delay of the acknowledgement on CPU_2 : $T_2 = AckTMO + n_2 x [0 CycleTime(CPU_2)]$ If AckTMO = 0 or ProdRate = 0, then $T_2 = 0$
T _{GR2}	$\begin{array}{l} \text{Message delay between two PES:} \\ \textbf{CPU}_{2} \rightarrow \text{COM}_{2} \rightarrow \text{network} \rightarrow \text{COM}_{1} \rightarrow \textbf{CPU}_{1} \\ \text{(usually identical with } T_{\text{GR1}}) \end{array}$
T ₃	Time on CPU_1 to process all protocol stacks: $T_3 = CycleTime(CPU_1) \times n_1$ where n_1 is the number of cycles needed on CPU_1 to process all protocol stacks. Set Communication Time Slice (see page 13-2) large enough to allow all protocol stacks to be processed in one cycle.

Receive Timeout (ReceiveTMO)

ReceiveTMO is the safety-related, user-configurable monitoring time, within which PES_1 must receive a correct response from PES_2 .



ReceiveTMO is also valid for the return path from PES_2 to PES_1 .

If ReceiveTMO elapses, safety-related communication closes down and all imported (via communication) safety-related tags reset to their user-configurable initial values.

If the ReceiveTMO \geq 2 x ResponseTime(minimum), the loss of at least one message can be handled without losing the Peer-to-Peer connection.

TIP

The maximum permissible value for ReceiveTMO depends upon the application and is set in the Peer-to-Peer Editor along with the expected maximum ResponseTime and the profile.

Profile	Response Time	Receive TMO
Fast & Cleanroom	40	80
Fast & Cleanroom	100	100

Resend Timeout (ResendTMO)

Resend Timeout is the safety-related monitoring time of PES_1 . If the receipt of a data transmission is not confirmed by PES_2 within this time period (ResendTMO), PES_1 repeats the data transmission.

Acknowledge Timeout (AckTMO)

Reception of data must be confirmed by the CPU with an ACK (acknowledge) message to the sender of the data. If the CPU is busy, ACK is delayed. Acknowledge Timeout is the maximum delay an ACK message may have.

The AckTMO cannot be entered manually, but is set in conjunction with a profile in the Peer-to-Peer Editor. For fast networks, AckTMO is zero.

Queue Length (QueueLen)

QueueLen describes the number of messages which may be transmitted without having to wait for an acknowledgement. It corresponds to the network bandwidth and delay.

QueueLen cannot be entered manually, but is set along with a profile in the Peer-to-Peer Editor.

Production Rate (ProdRate)

ProdRate is the minimum time interval between two data messages. The purpose of ProdRate is to limit the amount of data to a magnitude which can be transported to the recipient without overloading a (slow) communication channel. This results in an even load on the communication channel and avoids the reception of outdated data.

TIP

A production rate of 0 means that a data message can be transmitted with each cycle of the user program.

Watchdog Time (WDZ)

Watchdog Time is the maximum permissible duration of a RUN cycle on a PES. The RUN cycle depends upon the complexity of the user program and the number of Peer-to-Peer connections.

Worst-Case Reaction Time (T_R)

Worst-Case Reaction Time is a safety-relevant application parameter. It is the time between the occurrence of a physical input signal change at PES_1 and the corresponding physical output signal change at PES_2 :

Worst-Case Reaction Time $(T_R) \le t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_4$

where:

Variable:	Definition:
t ₁	The worst-case time for the user program on \mbox{PES}_1 to process the input signal and prepare the data for transmission.
	2 x WDZ (PES ₁)
t ₂	The additional transmission delay on PES ₁ .
	Equals 0 ms, if the ProdRate is 0.
	Otherwise: equals ReceiveTMO + WDZ (PES ₁)
t ₃	ReceiveTMO
	The maximum age of a message when received at \mbox{PES}_2 .
t ₄	The maximum time for the received data message to be processed by the user program on PES_2 and the output signal to be set.

Table 12.2 Worst-Case Reaction Time Variables

The Worst Case ReactionTime T_R is process-dependent and has to be coordinated with the approving board. In the Peer-to-Peer Editor, the Worst Case ReactionTime can be read in the "Worst Case" column.

	Resource	Worst Case	Profile
1	GPLC1200_2	1180	Fast
2	GPLC2000_1	2100	Fast

HH Network Profiles

Two HH network profiles are used to configure the appropriate set of parameters for the network in use. These profiles, described below, can be selected in the Properties of the HH Network Token Group.

- Profile I: Fast
- Profile II: Medium

A third profile option, None, allows you to set parameters manually. See The "None" Profile on page 12-16 for more information.

Profile I: Fast

This is the recommended profile. It provides the fastest data throughput, and covers approximately 95% of all application cases.

Use Fast for:

TIP

- applications which require fast data update rates within a Token Group⁽¹⁾.
- fast communication between two or more Token Groups⁽¹⁾, where the other Token Groups must run Fast as well.
- applications which require the shortest feasible Worst-Case Reaction Time.

Because Token Passing is switched off in the Fast profile, it is possible to generate a Token Group with only one controller. No second controller is needed to exchange the token. The single controller can communicate with other Token Groups containing more controllers.

The minimum network requirements are outlined in the table below.

Requirement	Definition
Fast	100 Mbit technology (100 Base TX)
Switched	Fast Ethernet (full-duplex recommended) LAN switches or integrated switches (GuardPLC 1600/1800) required.
Cleanroom	No loss of data due to traffic overload, harsh environmental conditions, or network defects.

Table 12.3 Minimum Ethernet Network Requirements for Profile I

TIP

The network can be shared with other applications, if sufficient bandwidth is provided.

A Token Group consists of at least two controllers, which share the same token. Each controller must be a member of exactly one Token Group. A Token Group can work stand-alone or can exchange data with other Token Groups.

Example of HH Network Profile I Topology



100 Mbit LAN Switch
Profile II: Medium

This profile provides medium-speed data throughput and covers approximately 4% of all application cases. It is appropriate for applications where timing is not a critical factor. With the Medium profile, network media access within a Token Group and communication with external Token Groups is controlled by Token Passing. These external Token Groups must also run Medium profiles.

IMPORTANT	In the Medium profile, a Token Group must be
	comprised of at least two controllers to carry out
	Token Passing, otherwise the controller
	configuration is erroneous. ("STOP/INVALID
	CONFIGURATION").

Table 12.4 Minimum Ethernet Network Requirements for Medium & Cleanroom

Requirement:	Definition:	
Medium:	10 Mbit technology (10 Base T)	
	Hubs are used within the Token Groups and LAN switches connect one Token Group to another.	
Clean:	No loss of data due to traffic overload, harsh environmental conditions, or network defects.	

IMPORTANT	The network must not be shared with other applications. Do not use more than one Programming Terminal (recommended). Programming Terminals increase network traffic, but
	do not participate in Token Passing!

Using LAN Switches and Hubs

When using a hub instead of a LAN switch to interconnect two or more controllers of the same Token Group, network access within the Token Group is no longer conducted by the hardware, but must be managed by Token Passing. Each Token Group handles its Token Passing individually, depending on user settings, CPU cycle times, network topology, etc. This means that for two (or more) Token Groups, which are exchanging data, Token Passing is not synchronized, resulting in a loss of messages between the Token Groups.

To minimize loss of messages, only one controller in IMPORTANT a Token Group is allowed to exchange data with exactly one controller in a second Token Group. Furthermore, the overall number of links between Token Groups is limited to eight. **Token Group 1 Token Group 2** GuardPLC 1600 controllers with integrated Ethernet Switch GuardPLC GuardPLC 2000 2000 controllers GuardPLC 1200 GuardPLC 1200 GuardPLC 1200 GuardPLC 1200 C Alter dealby Concepted İİ 0 00 00 00 00 00 GuardPLC 1800 controller with integrated Ethernet Switch **Programming Terminal** 10 Mbit Hub ----10 Mbit Switch

> The illustration above shows an application, consisting of two Token Groups. The Token Groups equipped with hubs require Token Passing to coordinate network access within the Token Groups. The Token Groups are interconnected via a LAN switch.

In this network topology, only one controller in Token Group 1 is allowed to exchange data with one controller in Token Group 2. If Token Group 2 needs data from different controllers in Token Group 1, the "talking" controller in Token Group 1 must collect the data.

In the HH Network Profile II Configuration Topology example on page 12-16, only the following links between Token Groups are allowed:

- $\bullet \ \mathrm{A1} \leftrightarrow \mathrm{A2}$
- B1 \leftrightarrow B2
- C1 \leftrightarrow C2

To configure this scenario, the controllers are placed in their respective token groups:

Token Group 1	Token Group 2	Token Group 3
Controller 1	Controller 5	Controller 9
Controller 2	Controller 6	Controller 10
Controller 3	Controller 7	Controller 11
Controller 4	Controller 8	Controller 12

In the Peer-to-Peer Editor, you create connections between controllers. For example, all controllers in Token Group 1 can communicate to each other, but Controller 1 can also communicate to Controller 5 in Token Group 2:

Token Group 1 Connections

Controller 1	Controller 2	Controller 3	Controller 4
Controller 2	Controller 1	Controller 1	Controller 1
Controller 3	Controller 3	Controller 2	Controller 2
Controller 4	Controller 4	Controller 4	Controller 3
Controller 5	—	—	



HH Network Profile II Configuration Topology

The "None" Profile

The None profile is different from the profiles described previously because it has no pre-defined parameters. You must set all the parameters manually.

To set the parameters, select either Fast or Medium from the HH Network/Token Group window, and press the Apply button. This presets the parameters according to the profile.

To enable manual changes and activate the entry fields, select None and press *Apply* again. The former parameter settings will be overridden and can then be changed.

Because the profiles Fast and Medium cover nearly all conceivable network topologies, None is only recommended for evaluation purposes. An extensive knowledge of the functions of the parameters, their value ranges, and their impact on the availability of the network is required for proper manual parameterization.

IMPORTANT The None profile should not be used in regular applications.

Peer-to-Peer Network Profiles

Due to the variety of parameters, manual network configuration is very complex and requires extensive knowledge of the parameters and how they influence one another.

To simplify the setup, RSLogix Guard PLUS provides six Peer-to-Peer profiles, which can be selected by the user, depending upon application requirements and the capabilities of the network.

Profiles are combinations of matched parameters which are automatically set when the user chooses a certain profile. The intention of all profiles is to optimize the data throughput on the network, which minimizes the ReceiveTMO and results in a low Worst Case ReactionTime. (For the definitions of the Peer-to-Peer network parameters, see page 12-6).

The six profiles are described in the following sections:

- Fast & Cleanroom,
- Fast & Noisy,
- Medium & Cleanroom,
- Medium & Noisy,
- Slow & Cleanroom, and
- Slow & Noisy

Peer-to-Peer Profile I: Fast & Cleanroom

This profile provides the fastest data throughput for applications which require fast data update rates. It is also best for applications which require the shortest feasible Worst-Case ReactionTime.

Fast &	Cleanrooom	Characteristics

Minimum Ethernet network requirements ⁽¹⁾	Fast	100 Mbit technology (100 Base TX)
	Switched	Fast Ethernet (full-duplex recommended) LAN switches or integrated switches (GuardPLC 1600/1800) required.
loquitoritorito	Cleanroom	No loss of data due to traffic overload, harsh environmental conditions or network defects.
Characteristics of the communication path	Minimum delays ResponseTime ≤ReceiveTMO ÷ 2 (otherwise ERROR)	
	ResponseTime	manually set in the Peer-to-Peer Editor
	ReceiveTMO	manually set in the Peer-to-Peer Editor
Variables	WDZ (Watchdog Time)	manually set in the controller properties
Suitable HH network profile	Fast	
Peer-to-Peer parameter presets	 QueueLen = 2 Communication Time Slice large enough to process and send all data defined for transmission in one CPU cycle. ResendTMO if ReceiveTMO ≥ 2 x WDZ, then ResendTMO = ReceiveTMO ÷ 2, or ResendTMO = ResponseTime, whichever is greater if ReceiveTMO < 2 x WDZ, then ResendTMO = ReceiveTMO AckTMO = 0 ProdRate = 0 	

(1) The network can be shared with other applications, if sufficient bandwidth is provided.

Peer-to-Peer Profile II: Fast & Noisy

This profile provides fast data throughput for applications which require fast data update rates. It is good for applications which require the shortest feasible Worst-Case Reaction Time where minor loss of messages can be corrected.

Fast & Noisy Characteristics

Minimum Ethernet network requirements	Fast	100 Mbit technology (100 Base TX), if HH network profile Fast & Cleanroom is selected. 10 Mbit technology (10 Base T), if HH network profile Medium & Cleanroom is selected.
	Switched	Fast Ethernet (full duplex recommended) LAN switches, if HH network profile Fast & Cleanroom is selected. 10 MBit hubs, if HH network profile Medium & Cleanroom is selected. Or use switches integrated into the GuardPLC 1600/1800 controllers.
	Noisy	Low probability for loss of messages. Time for ≥ 1 repetitions.
Characteristics of the communication path	Minimum delays ResponseTime ≤ReceiveTMO ÷ 2 (otherwise ERROR)	
	ResponseTime	manually set in the Peer-to-Peer Editor
Variables	ReceiveTMO	manually set in the Peer-to-Peer Editor
	WDZ	manually set in the controller properties
Suitable HH network profile	Fast Medium (≤10 controllers in a Token Group)	
Peer-to-Peer parameter presets	 QueueLen = 2 Communication Time Slice large enough to process and send all data defined for transmission in one CPU cycle. ResendTMO if ReceiveTMO ≥ 2 x WDZ, then ResendTMO = ResponseTime (≥ 1 Resend possible) if ReceiveTMO < 2 x WDZ, then ERROR AckTMO = 0 ProdRate = 0 	

Peer-to-Peer Profile III: Medium & Cleanroom

This profile provides medium data throughput for applications where only a moderate data update rate is required and where the Worst Case Reaction Time is not a critical factor. It is well-suited for virtual private networks (VPN), where data exchange is slow due to safety devices (firewalls, encoding/decoding), but error-free.



Normally use the profile Medium & Noisy (see page 12-21).

Medium & Cleanroom Characteristics

Minimum Ethernet network requirements	Medium or Fast	10 MBit (10 Base T) or 100 Mbit technology (100 Base TX) or network with both 10 MBit and 100 MBit components. LAN switches required.
	Clean	No loss of data due to traffic overload, harsh environmental conditions or network defects. Time for ≥ 0 repetitions.
Characteristics of the communication path	Moderate delays ResponseTime ≤ReceiveTMO (otherwise ERROR)	
	ResponseTime	manually set in the Peer-to-Peer Editor
Variables	ReceiveTMO	manually set in the Peer-to-Peer Editor
	WDZ	manually set in the controller properties
Suitable HH network profile	Fast Medium (≤10 controllers in a Token Group)	
Peer-to-Peer parameter presets	 QueueLen = 3 Communication Time Slice large enough to process and send all data defined for transmission in one CPU cycle. ResentTMO if ReceiveTMO ≥ 2 x WDZ, then ResendTMO = ResponseTime (≥ 0 Resends possible) if ReceiveTMO < 2 x WDZ, then ResendTMO = ReceiveTMO AckTMO = ReceiveTMO or AckTMO = AckTMOMax, whichever is smaller ProdRate = ResponseTime ÷ 4 	

Peer-to-Peer Profile IV: Medium & Noisy

The Medium and Noisy profile provides medium data throughput for applications where only a moderate data update rate is required. It is good for applications where the Worst Case ReactionTime is not a critical factor. Minor loss of messages can be corrected.

IVIEUIUIII & INUISY LIIdid	acteristics
----------------------------	-------------

Minimum Ethernet network requirements	Medium or Fast	10 MBit (10 Base T) or 100 Mbit technology (100 Base TX) or network with both 10 MBit and 100 MBit components. Usage of hubs possible.
	Noisy	Low probability for loss of messages. Time for \geq 1 repetitions.
Characteristics of the communication path	Moderate delays ResponseTime ≤ReceiveTMO ÷ 2	
	ResponseTime	manually set in the Peer-to-Peer Editor
Variables	ReceiveTMO	manually set in the Peer-to-Peer Editor
	WDZ	manually set in the controller properties
Suitable HH network profile	Medium or Fast	
Peer-to-Peer parameter presets	 QueueLen = 3 Communication Time Slice large enough to process and send all data defined for transmission in one CPU cycle. ResendTMO if ReceiveTMO ≥ 2 x WDZ, then ResendTMO = ResponseTime (≥ 1 Resend possible) if ReceiveTMO < 2 x WDZ, then ERROR AckTMO = ReceiveTMO or AckTMO = AckTMOMax, whichever is smaller ProdBate = ResponseTime ÷ 4 	

Peer-to-Peer Profile V: Slow & Cleanroom

This profile provides low data throughput for applications where only a low data update rate is required from remote controllers, via communication paths, whose conditions cannot be predicted by the user.



Normally use the profile Slow & Noisy (see page 12-23).

Slow & Cleanroom Characteristics

Minimum Ethernet network requirements	Slow Primarily for data exchange via ISDN, leased line or slow line-of-sight radio link.	
	Clean	No loss of data due to traffic overload, harsh environmental conditions or network defects. Time for ≥ 0 repetitions.
Characteristics of the communication path	Moderate to long delays ResponseTime ≤ReceiveTMO, otherwise ERROR	
	ResponseTime	manually set in the Peer-to-Peer Editor
	ReceiveTMO	manually set in the Peer-to-Peer Editor
Variables	WDZ	manually set in the controller properties
	Ν	number of link partners a controller can talk to defined in the Peer-to-Peer Editor
Suitable HH network profile	Medium or Fast	
Peer-to-Peer parameter presets	 QueueLen = 4 Communication Time Slice large enough to process and send all data defined for transmission in one CPU cycle. ResendTMO if ReceiveTMO ≥ 2 x WDZ, then ResendTMO = ResponseTime (≥ 0 Resends possible) if ReceiveTMO < 2 x WDZ, then ResendTMO = ReceiveTMO AckTMO = ReceiveTMO or AckTMO = AckTMOMax, whichever is smaller ProdRate = ResponseTime ÷ 4 	

Peer-to-Peer Profile IV: Slow & Noisy

This profile provides low data throughput for applications where only low data update rates are required. It is primarily for data exchange via poor quality telephone lines or distorted radio links.

Slow & Noisy Characteristics

Minimum Ethernet	Slow	Data transfer via telephone, satellite link, radio etc.	
network requirements	Noisy	Low loss of data due to distortions on the communication path or network defects. Time for \geq 1 repetitions.	
Characteristics of the communication path	Moderate to long ResponseTime ≤) delays ReceiveTMO ÷ 2, otherwise ERROR	
Variables	ResponseTime	manually set in the Peer-to-Peer Editor	
Valiables	ReceiveTMO	manually set in the Peer-to-Peer Editor	
Suitable HH network profile	Medium or Fast		
Peer-to-Peer parameter presets	 QueueLen = 4 Communication Time Slice large enough to process and send all data defined for transmission in one CPU cycle. ResendTMO if ReceiveTMO ≥ 2 x WDZ, then ResendTMO = ResponseTime (≥ 1 Resend possible) if ReceiveTMO < 2 x WDZ, then ERROR AckTMO = ReceiveTMO or AckTMO = AckTMOMax, whichever is smaller ProdBate = BesponseTime ÷ 4 		

Configuring Peer-to-Peer Communication

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
considerations for using Peer-to-Peer	13-1
setting peer-to-peer controller properties	13-2
create HH network	13-4
design the logic	13-7
configure Peer-to-Peer communication	13-11
compiling and downloading	13-16
network optimizing	13-17

Using Peer-to-Peer communication, you can exchange signals between controllers by dragging signals onto pages that create controller-to-controller connections. For example: Controller 1 could send three signals (out1, out2, and out3) to Controller 2. Controller 2 can then use these signals as inputs within its function block code.

Considerations for Using Peer-to-Peer

Before you start a project that exchanges data between several controllers, you should become familiar with the requirements of your application. Questions about the network design, which should be answered prior to developing the project, are:

- Is timing a critical factor of the application? This is the most important question!
- How many controllers will be involved?
- Is it necessary to establish an Ethernet network exclusively for the application, or can an existing network be shared?
- How far away from each other are the controllers?
- Are transportation media, other than Ethernet, needed (such as telephone lines, radios, fiber optics, etc.)?
- Is it necessary for each controller to communicate with all other controllers?
- Can some functions of the application be grouped and executed separately by an isolated group of controllers (Token Group)?

Setting Peer-to-Peer Controller Properties

Right-click on *Resource* and select *Properties*. Set the timing parameters and switches according to the requirements of your application.



The "Communication Time Slice" and "Code Generation Version" settings are needed for Peer-to-Peer network parameterization.

Communication Time Slice

The Communication Time Slice is the time in milliseconds reserved for a controller to carry out and complete all communication tasks in one CPU cycle.

The minimum Communication Time Slice depends on the number of communication connections (n) a controller has.

The minimum Communication Time Slice (CTS_{min}) is calculated as follows:

For n ≤13:	CTS _{min} (n ≤13) = n x 1 ms + 4 ms
For n > 13:	CTS _{min} (n > 13) = n x 1.3 ms

IMPORTANT Do not set the Communication Time Slice below the calculated value. If the Communication Time Slice is too small, it takes more than one CPU cycle to carry out the pending communication tasks. Therefore, more time is needed to complete the communication tasks, which degrades performance and could result in a communication shutdown due to a communication timeout (ReceiveTMO).

The time actually needed for communication adds to the CPU cycle time. A short Communication Time Slice limits the communication time to a low value. This prevents the CPU cycle time from being noticeably influenced by network occurrences. Although a Communication Time Slice well above the minimum value may result in cycle time on the local machine slowing down a bit if network traffic is heavy, it is not necessarily negative.

If you are transferring safety I/O over the network, you need a Communicatin Time Slice high enough to guarantee that the communications are completed every cycle. If it takes more than one cycle to read/write safety I/O, your safety time will need to increase to compensate.

If you are only transferring status data over the network, then a lower Communication Time Slice is permissible, because it leaves more time in the cycle for your program to run. It's likely to be acceptable even if it takes more than one cycle to read the status.

Check the CPU short-term diagnostics for any "Time Slice expired" entries and increase the Communication Time Slice if necessary, before the application goes into regular operation. In the "Statistics" of the Control Panel, "Number of Time Slices" higher than 1 also indicate a Communication Time Slice that is too short. "Number of Time Slices" indicates the number of cycles it took for communications to complete.

The maximum Communication Time Slice depends on the application and is calculated as follows:

WDZ ≥ Communication Time Slice (max) + Application Execution Time

In other words, the Communication Time Slice plus Application Execution Time must not exceed the Watchdog Time.

EXAMPLE	If the controller on page 13-2 has 10 connections, the minimum Communication Time Slice is:		
	$CTS_{min} = 10 \text{ x } 1 \text{ ms} + 4 \text{ ms} = 14 \text{ ms}.$		
	CTS _{min} is increased by 6 milliseconds to provide a safety margin.		
	$CTS_{min} = 20 ms$		
	With a Watchdog Time of 500 ms, this leaves 480 ms for the application to be executed.		

Code Generator Version

To compile the logic correctly for your type of controller, set Code Generator Version to "3" for RSLogix Guard PLUS software. Set to version 2 for RSLogix Guard software.

Create a Peer-to-Peer Network

To create a Peer-to-Peer network, right-click on the project in the Hardware Management window and select *New* \rightarrow *HH-Network*.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Management Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help				
E- configuration	New HH-Network			
ia - National [2] Resource - Rogramming Terminal	⊊opy Paste			
	Delete			
	Print Properties			

You can right-click on HH-Network and Rename the entry, if desired.

Create Token Group(s)

A single Token Group is automatically created with the HH network. If you need more, create Token Groups by right-clicking on *HH-Network* and selecting *New* \rightarrow *Token Group*.

📑 RSLogix Guard PLUS Har	dware Management
Project Edit Signals Online	<u>W</u> indows <u>H</u> elp
🖻 🏣 example 1	
🔄 🚄 Configuration	
🗄 🔀 [2] Resource	
	nal
HH-Network_1	Node Editor
	New 🕨 🏹 Token Group
	⊆opy
	Paste
	Delete
	Print
	Properties
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

Expand the *HH-Network*, right-click on the Token Group(s) and *Rename* the Token Group(s), if desired.

Add Controllers to Token Group(s)

A controller must be a member of only one Token Group. To add a controller to a Token Group:

- 1. Expand the *HH-Network*, right-click on a Token Group and select *Node Editor*. The Node Editor is empty when you open it for the first time.
- **2.** Click on a controller in the tree view and drag and drop it in the Node Editor.



Configure Token Group(s)

1. Right-click on the Token Group and select *Properties*. In the "HH-Network/Token Group" window select a profile.

For a description of the HH-Network profiles, see page 12-10. In general, "Fast" works with most network topologies.

2. Enter a Token Group ID.

The Token Group ID must be greater than 0. If you create more than one Token Group, each Token Group must have a unique ID.

Do not make changes to the other settings in this window.

See page 12-3 for the description of the HH protocol parameters.

RSL only Guard PLUS Hardware Management				
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help				
CAT4Estop Configuration Gamma (4) RobotA Gamma (2) RobotB Gamma (2) RobotC Configuration Configurat	Node Editor [/ Delete Node Resource 1 RobotA 2 RobotB 3 RobotC	Type Type Name Profile Token Group ID Protocol Mode Link Mode Response Time [ms] Bus Cycle Time [ms] Token Alive Timeout [ms] Primary Timeout [ms] Secondary Interval [ms] Link Mode (Extern) Response Time (external) [ms]	Group_1 Image: Constraint of the second	

IMPORTANT

You must select identical profiles for Token Groups that you want to interconnect. If Link Mode (External) does not match, communication between Token Groups is impossible.

Design the Logic

Create Peer-to-Peer Signals

Signals are transferred among controllers over the Peer-to-Peer network. Consider the following when creating signals:

- You can create as many signals as you need in the logic for all controllers.
- You can add signals anytime.
- Signals with the same name can be used on more than one controller without influencing each other (LOCAL variable), as long as they are not exchanged via network.
- Signals which are intended for network exchange, must have the same name on the participating controllers. Whether a signal is written to or read from the network is defined in the Peer-to-Peer Editor as explained in "Configure Peer-to-Peer Communication" on page 13-11.

Use Peer-to-Peer System Signals

The status of the Peer-to-Peer communication as well as some timing parameters can be evaluated in the user program by means of system signals. Furthermore, the user program can control how a Peer-to-Peer connection is set up.

Input System Signals

📝 P2P System Signals /GPLC_1200_1/P2P/GPLC 📃 🗖 🗙				
∐ Help				
Inputs	Outputs			
	Name	Туре	Signal	
1	Connection State	UINT	P2P_Status	
2	Receive Timeout	UDINT		
3	Response Time	UDINT		
4	Version	WORD		

The following system signals can be used as inputs for the application:

• **Connection State**. Using the Connection State system signal of the Peer-to-Peer Editor, the user program can evaluate the status of the communication between two controllers. The following table shows the possible values for the Connection State system signal and the corresponding status.

Value	Status	Explanation	
0	CLOSED	Communication path is closed. No attempt to connect.	
1	TRY_OPEN	Communication path is closed. Attempt to connect.	
2	CONNECTED	Communication path is open. No attempt to connect.	

- **Receive Timeout**, in milliseconds, is set by the user. For more information see Receive Timeout (ReceiveTMO) on page 12-8 and "Define Peer-to-Peer Parameters" on page 13-13.
- **Response Time**, in milliseconds, is the actual value of the last answer message and is identical to RspT last in the P2P status of the Control Panel. For more information, see "Reconfigure ResponseTime" on page 13-22.
- **Version** indicates the CRC for the Peer-to-Peer configuration between two controllers. The CRC must be identical in order to establish communication.

Output System Signal

Using the output system Connection Control signal, the user program can control how the Peer-to-Peer connection is set up.

	📝 P2P System Signals /GPLC_1200_1/P2P/GPLC 🖃 🗖 🗙					
I	Help					
	Inputs	Outputs				
		Name		Туре	Signal	
	1	Connection	Control	WORD	P2PControl	
1						
						1

Value	Setting	Explanation
0x0000	AUTOCONNECT	After loss of Peer-to-Peer communication, the controller tries to re-establish communication in the next CPU cycle. This is the standard mode of operation.
0x0100	TOGGLE_MODE 0	These modes allow automatic connect with DISABLE
0x0101	TOGGLE_MODE 1	after loss of communication.
		If TOGGLE_MODE is 0 and communication is lost (Connection State = CLOSED), a connect is performed only after TOGGLE MODE is set to 1 by the user program.
		If TOGGLE_MODE is 1 and communication is lost, a connect is performed only after TOGGLE_MODE is set to 0 by the user program.
0x8000	DISABLED	Peer-to-Peer communication is disabled. No attempt to connect.

IMPORTANT If the P2PControl signal, in the illustration on page 13-8, is set to 32768, Peer-to-Peer communication is disabled. If Connection Control is not set by the application, the default is 0 and Autoconnect is enabled.

Design the Logic for all Controllers

Design the logic for the controllers, considering the variables intended for network exchange.

The following examples show part of the routines for controllers Robot A and Robot B, respectively. To evaluate the state of the "OutRange" signal in Robot B, use the same signal name (OutRange) as an input for the logic of Robot B. OutRange is sent over Ethernet, via Peer-to-Peer, from Robot A to Robot B, which uses it as an input.

Design Logic for Robot A



Design Logic for Robot B



Configure Peer-to-Peer Communication

As discussed in the following sections, you configure Peer-to-Peer Communication by:

- Defining Controller Connections
- Assigning the HH-Network
- Selecting a Peer-to-Peer Profile
- Defining Peer-to-Peer Parameters, and
- Defining Process Signals for Exchange

Define Controller Connections

To define all of the controllers each controller can communicate with:

1. Right-click on the resource you want to define controller connections for and select *Peer-to-Peer Editor*.

The title bar of the Peer-to-Peer Editor shows the name of the selected controller. When the Peer-to-Peer Editor is opened for the first time, it does not contain any entries.

2. In the project tree, click on a resource and drag and drop it in the Peer-to-Peer Editor. Repeat this step to add more controller connections.

In the example below, RobotA (title bar) has a connection to RobotB and RobotC. Because the return path is automatically added, you do not need to drag RobotA onto the Peer-to-Peer editors of RobotB or RobotC.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Management								
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help								
🗄 - 🎦 CAT4Estop	📝 Peer	-to-Peer E	ditor [Roba	tA]				-D×
🖻 - 📕 Configuration]] Delete	Peer-to-Pee	r Connection	Connect Proce	ess Signals 🛛 Connei	st System Signals [HH-Network-C	Configurati 🗙
🕀 🔀 [4] RobotA		Resource	Worst Case	Network	Profile	Response Time	[ms] Receive	TMO [ms] Re
E Robots		RobotB	700	HH-Network_1	Fast & Noisy	100	500	10
Erogramming Terminal	2	RobotC	700	HH-Network_1	Fast & Noisy	100	500	10
E HH-Network 1								
C Token Group 1								
••• •-								•

The following example shows how the three Peer-to-Peer editors would appear if connections existed between all three controllers.

pee 🖉	r-to-Peer l	ditor [Rob	ota j				r		티비즈			
] Delete	e Peer-to-Pe	er Connection	Connect Proc	ess Signals	Connect	System Signals	HH	-Network-Conf	igurati 🔉			
	Resource	Worst Case	Network	Profile		Response Time	e [ms]	ReceiveTM	D [ms] Re			
1	RobotB	700	HH-Network_1	Fast & Nois	у	100		500	10			
2	RobotC	700	HH-Network_1	Fast & Nois	y	100		500	10			
	4											
	_			_	_		-	_				
💋 Peei	r-to-Peer E	ditor [Robo	otB]		_		_		-미지			
]] Delete	e Peer-to-Pee	er Connection	Connect Proc	ess Signals	Connect	System Signals	HH	Network-Conf	igurati अ			
	Resource	Worst Case	Network	Profile		Response Time	e (ms)	ReceiveTM) [ms] Re			
1	RobotA	700	HH-Network_1	Fast & Nois	у	100		500	10			
2	RobotC	700	HH-Network_1	Fast & Nois	у	100		500	10			
									Þ			
-									1-1-1			
💋 Peer-	to-Peer Ec	litor [Robol						-	JUN			
🛛 Delete	Peer-to-Peer	Connection	Connect Proce	ss Signals	Connect S	ystem Signals	HH-N	letwork-Config	jurati ≫			
	Resource	Worst Case	Network	Profile		Response Time	[ms]	ReceiveTMO	[ms] Re			
1	RobotA	700	HH-Network_1	Fast & Noisy	1	100		500	10			
2	RobotB	700	HH-Network_1	Fast & Noisy	1	100		500	10			
•												

Assign HH-Network

Peer-to-Peer communication requires the HH-Network, which must be entered in the Peer-to-Peer Editor.

To assign the HH-Network, click on the HH-Network in the tree view and drag and drop it in the *Network* column of the Peer-to-Peer Editor. The return path is automatically updated with the HH-Network.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Management							_	
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help								
🖻 - 🎦 CAT4Estop	📝 Peer	-to-Peer E	ditor [Roba	itA]			_	
🖹 - 📕 Configuration]] Delete	Peer-to-Pee	r Connection	Connect Proce	ess Signals 🛛 Connect	System Signals HI	I-Network-Configu	rati 🗙
E- 2 [4] RobotA		Resource	Worst Case	Network	Profile	Response Time [m:	s] ReceiveTMO [r	ms] Re
E- C [2] HobotB	[1	RobotB	700	HH-Network_1	Fast & Noisy	100	500	10
E- C [3] HODOL	2	RobotC	700	HH-Network_1	Fast & Noisy	100	500	10
C Token Group 1								
	•							Þ

Select Peer-to-Peer Profile

1. Click in the *Profile* column and select one of the profiles. Make sure that the profile is suitable for your network topology and matches the HH profile. See page 12-10 for a detailed description of all the profiles.

ſ	🥖 Peer-	to-Peer E	ditor [Robo	tA]						×
U Delete Peer-to-Peer Connection Connect Proces				ess Signals	Connect	System Signals	HH·	Network-Configurati	»	
11		Resource	Worst Case	Network	Profile		Response Time	e [ms]	ReceiveTMO [ms]	Re
IL	1	RobotB	700	HH-Network_1	Fast & Noi	isy 🗾	100		500	10
10	2	RobotC	700	HH-Network_1	Fast & Clea	anroom	100		500	10
ľ					Fast & Noi	sy				
Ш					Medium &	Cleanroom				
Ш					Medium &	Noisy				
II	•			Slow & Cle	anroom					
ľ					Slow & No	isy				

2. Click outside the table or press the Return key to activate the selection. The profile of the return path is automatically updated with the new profile.

Define Peer-to-Peer Parameters

The most important timing parameter of a safety related installation is the Safety Time. Safety Time is the time a process can run with incorrect controller outputs without affecting the safety of the process (see the *GuardPLC Controller Systems Safety Reference Manual*, publication number 1755-RM001 for more details).

The Worst Case Reaction Time (T_R) is the time within which two linked controllers must detect the occurrence of a physical input signal at PES₁ and put out the resulting physical output signal at PES₂.

To guarantee the integrity of the application, the requirement below must always be fulfilled:

 T_R < Safety Time

When you select a Peer-to-Peer profile, most parameters are automatically preset. Because ReceiveTMO (safety-relevant) is part of the Worst Case ReactionTime T_R (see Peer-to-Peer Protocol Parameters on page 12-6), ReceiveTMO must be calculated and set manually by overwriting the default value in the Peer-to-Peer Editor. For profiles where ProdRate = 0 (Fast & Cleanroom, Fast & Noisy), ReceiveTMO is:

ReceiveTMO =
$$T_R - 2 \times WDZ(PES_1) - 2 \times WDZ(PES_2)$$

For profiles where ProdRate \neq 0, ReceiveTMO is:

```
ReceiveTMO = [T_R - 3 \times WDZ(PES_1) - 2 \times WDZ(PES_2)] \div 2
```

Calculate the ReceiveTMO with the suitable formula and overwrite the default value in the Peer-to-Peer Editor.

Profile	Response Time [ms]	ReceiveTMO [ms]
Fast & Cleanroom	100	500
1		

In first approximation, the ResponseTime can be calculated as:

ResponseTime = ReceiveTMO \div 2

Overwrite the default value of the ResponseTime with the calculated value.

TIP Setting the ResponseTime this way allows the controller to resend a message, in case of unexpected message loss. For best network performance, the ReceiveTMO and the ResponseTime are optimized after the project has been compiled, loaded and started on the controllers. At that time, the actual ResponseTimes and the actual cycle times can be read in the Control Panel.

Define The Signals to Exchange Between Each Controller Connection

- **1.** Right-click on a resource in the project tree, select *Peer-to-Peer Editor*. The Peer-to-Peer Editor opens.
- **2.** Click on a line number (left-most column) in the Peer-to-Peer Editor table. This selects a controller with which the controller, named in the headline of the Peer-to-Peer Editor, exchanges data.
- **3.** Open the Signal Editor (select *Signals* \rightarrow *Editor*).

- **4.** Click on the *Connect Process Signals* button in the Peer-to-Peer Editor.
- **5.** Arrange the Signal Editor and the Peer-to-Peer (P2P) Process Signals window side by side. When you open it for the first time, the P2P Process Signals window is empty.
- **6.** Using the tabs below the button bar of the P2P Process Signals, select the direction of data exchange.

In the example below, the direction of data exchange is from RobotA to RobotB.

7. In the Signal Editor, click on a signal name and drag & drop it in the P2P Process Signals.

You can also add signals using *New Connected Signals* button. this creates a new line in the list in which you must enter the case-sensitive signal name exactly as defined in the Signal Editor.

💋 Signa	l Editor Filter:*			_	
🛛 New Sij	gnal 🛛 Delete Signal 🗍 He	elp			
	Name	Туре	Retain	Constant	Di 🔺
1	Circuit_Reset 🔨	BOOL			
2	Cycle_Inputs	880			
3	EStop_ch1	BOOL			
4	EStop_ch2	BOOL			
5	Fault_Reset	BOOL			
6	Input_Fault	BOOL			
7	Lamp3	BOOL			
8	Lamp_Test	BOOL			
9	Output	BOOL			
10	Pulse_Test_Fault	BOOL			
11	Pulse_Test_Source_ch1	BOOL			
12	Pulse_Test_Source_ch2	BOOL			
13	Tiedown_Fault	BOOL			—
•		1		1	

TIP

Sending a signal from one controller to another $(PES_1 \rightarrow PES_2)$ makes the value of this signal available in PES₂. To process this value in the logic of PES₂, identical signal names must be used in the logic of both PES₁ and PES₂.

8. Change the direction of data exchange with the tab and define the return signals.

The illustration below shows the signals which RobotB sends to RobotA.

ŀ	📝 P2P I	Process Signals 'R	obotA' - 'RobotB'	
]] New C	onnected Signal 📔 D	elete Connected Signa	al Help
l	RobotA	-> RobotB Robot	tB -> RobotA	
		Туре	Signal	
1	1	BOOL	Fault_Reset	
I	2	BOOL	Tiedown_Fault	
I			•	
I				
	,	•		

Compile and Download

Compile Logic

If changes, such as adding or deleting a tag, are made to a connection between two controllers, the code must be recompiled for both controllers.

To compile logic, right-click on a resource (controller) in the RSLogix Guard PLUS Project Management window, and select *Code Generation*.



If code generation is not successful, carefully check the Error-state viewer in the Hardware Management Window for error messages and correct the errors.

Start Download

- **1.** Using the Multi-Control Panel, click the *Select all* button **I** to select all controllers.
- **2.** Click *Stop* **•** to make sure that all controllers are in STOP mode.

3. Click *Download* to start the simultaneous download for all selected controllers. The "Action" column shows the command which is currently executed or a short status message.

In the example below, the downloads have completed successfully.

Multi	Multi Control Panel									-D×
PADT F	PADT Resource Online Table Help									
] 👼 7.] <i>≈ 7</i> → ∎ 📲 👫 3 🖉 🔳 🗆 ↔									
	Name	System.Rack	CPU Sta	ate	CPU Configuration CRC	Avg. Cycle	Rem. Force Time	Faulty I/O Modu	Action	
1	RobotA	60000.0	STOP / Y	VALID CONFIGI	16#3ece3bed	2	0	0	Download:0K	
2	RobotB	60001.0	STOP / '	VALID CONFIGI	16#fc9f0419	2	0	0	Download:OK	
•										
All opera	itions succes	ssfully terminate	ed.							

4. After successful download, the CPU Status is STOP/VALID CONFIGURATION. Select all controllers again if necessary and click *Coldstart* to start the application.

Network Optimizing

With the initial network settings made in the HH protocol and Peer-to-Peer protocol, communication is likely to work, but the settings can be optimized for homogenous network load and faster message exchange.

IMPORTANT	If there is no real need to reduce Worst Case ReactionTime, do not make changes to the WDZ and the ReceiveTMO!
	Only optimize the ResponseTime.
	A high WDZ or ReceiveTMO does not degrade performance, but an optimized ResponseTime increases availability.

Before starting the optimization steps, let the project run for several hours. Test as many operating conditions as possible to address timing factors that may prevent a project from running after optimization.

Check Routine Timing

- **1.** In the Multi Control Panel, select all controllers and click the *Control Panel* button.
- 2. In the Control Panels of each controller, select the *Statistics* tab.



- 3. Write down the maximum "Cycle Time" for each controller.
- 4. Write down the maximum "Com. Time Slice" for each controller.

IMPORTANT	Before you continue to optimize settings, make sure that <i>Number of Time Slices</i> (see above) is not greater than 1. If <i>Number of Time Slices max</i> . is greater than 1, more than one CPU cycle is needed to carry out all communication tasks.
	In this case, you need to determine if it is permissible for communications to take multiple cycles to complete. This depends on how many cycles can be completed within the safety time.
	If you need to increase the <i>Com. Time Slice</i> , start the code generator again, and download and start the new routine on the controller.

Reconfigure Watchdog Time

To optimize the Watchdog Time to the lowest possible value, you must know the maximum CPU cycle time. Cycle Time max., as displayed in the Statistics of the Control Panel (see page 13-19), is the value that occurred so far, but is not necessarily the maximum value that can occur depending on network and process conditions.

If the maximum Cycle Time cannot be estimated, run the project for several hours and under as many conditions as possible.

To reconfigure Watchdog Time:

- **1.** In the project tree, right-click on the first resource and select *Properties.*
- 2. Calculate a Margin of Safety, MoS:

MoS = 0.1 x (Cycle Time max.) MoS should be at least 6 ms. If MoS < 6 ms, then MoS = 6 ms

3. Readjust the Watchdog Time:

Watchdog Time = (Cycle Time max.) + (MoS)

In the example on the following page, the new Watchdog Time is: 8 ms + 6 ms = 14 ms.

🚺 Control Panel [RobotA]	N/Configuration/Rob		-DX
PADT Resource Communication Test Mode Extra H	Tupe		
🗩 🕫 🕨 = 🌉 🕩	rype		
Resource State Safety Parameters Statistics	F Name	RobotA	IP Se ◀ 🕨
	System ID [SRS]	60000	
	Safety Time [ms]	100	
	Watchdog Time [ms]	14	
Date 7 Time 02/15/2000 03:36:00	Main Enable	v	
	Autostart		
	Start/Restart allowed	v	
	Loading allowed	V	
last avg. min. max.	Test Mode allowed		
Cycle Time [ms] 6 6 6 9	Online Test allowed		
Com. Time Slice [ms] 0 0 0 2	Forcing allowed	V	
Number of Time Slices 1 1 1 1	Stop on Force Timeout		
	max. Com. Time Slice [ms]	1 8	
	Code Generation Version	3	
	<u>K</u> ar	ncel <u>A</u> pply <u>H</u> elp	
		F I/O Online Admi	inistrator

4. For all controllers in your project, re-adjust the Watchdog Times to their individual optimum values.



After these modifications, you must re-compile the project with the Code Generator and download the routines in the controllers again.

5. Start the project and let it run for a while. If you encounter controller errors due to a Watchdog Time that is too short, increase the Watchdog Time. Otherwise, continue with the network optimization.

Check HH Status

In the Control Panel, click on the HH Status tab.

🕽 🕆 Control Panel [RobotA]									
PADT Resource Communication Test Mode Extra Help									
<i>₹</i> 77 () ■ 📴 (1)									
Resource State Safety Parameters Statistics P2P State Distributed I/O HH State Environment Data OS IP S	e∢⊧								
last avg. min. max.									
Bus Cycle Time [ms] 0 0 0 0									
Resource LinkID State RspT last [ms] RspT avg. [ms] RspT min. [ms] RspT max. [ms] Link Mode Token Group ID									
RobotB 16#ea610001 0 0 0 TCS direct 4									

The HH Status displays the following information:

Parameter	Explanation
Bus Cycle Time	Time in milliseconds for a Token cycle. The value is 0, if Token Passing is off (any Cleanroom profile).
Resource	Name of the controller
Linkld	Controller network ID
State	Status of the communication
RspT	 If Link Mode is "TCS direct" (Token Passing OFF), RspT is the ResponseTime of the HH profile for a message from PES₁ → PES₂ → PES₁, based on the network hardware and topology. This parameter cannot be changed by the user. If Link Mode is "TCS TOKCYC" (Token Passing ON), RspT is part of the Bus Cycle Time.
Link Mode	 "TCS direct" when Token Passing is OFF. "TCS TOKCYC" when Token Passing is ON.
Token Group ID	ID of the Token Group

Read the RspT min parameter. This is the minimum time needed for the communication modules (COM) of two controllers to talk to each other. Refresh RspT values with *Communication* \rightarrow *Update HH State*, if Token Passing is OFF.

Check Peer-to-Peer Status

In the Control Panel, click on the P2P Status tab.

📭 Control Panel [Robot1]											
PADT Resource Communication Test Mode Extra Help											
<i>₽. 1</i> 2 () ■ 📴 (1)											
Resource State Safety Parameters Statistics P2P State Distributed I/O HH State Environment Data OS IP Settings											
Resource System.Rack State RspT last RspT av RspT m	n RspT max MsgNo AckMsgNo DataSeq Opens	Resends BadMsg EarlyMsg ReceiveTI ResendT AckTMO CurKeVer NewKeVer									
RobotB 60001.0 Connected 11 10 5	19 54980 54979 54980 1	0 0 0 500 100 0 \$#000020e3									

The P2P Status displays the following information

Parameter	Explanation
Resource	name of the controller
System.Rack	network ID of the controller
State	Status of the communication
RspT (last, avg, min, max)	Measured ResponseTime for a message from $PES_1 \rightarrow PES_2 \rightarrow PES_1$, based on the network hardware, CPU cycle time, and Peer-to-Peer profile. This parameter will be optimized later.
MsgNr	Counter (32-bit resolution) for all messages sent to a controller. <i>In the illustration above, Robot A has sent message no.</i> 54980 to Robot B.
AckMsgNr	The number of the received message that the controller has to acknowledge. <i>In the illustration above, Robot A has</i> acknowledged <i>message no. 54979 from Robot B.</i>
DataSeq	Counter (16-bit resolution) for sent messages, which contain process data. <i>In the illustration above, Robot A has sent data message no. 54980 to Robot B.</i>
Opens	Number of successful connects to a controller. A figure higher than 1 indicates that a controller dropped out and has been reconnected.
Resends	Counter (32-bit resolution) for messages that have been resent due to an elapsed ResendTMO.
BadMsgs	Counter (32-bit resolution) for received messages that are corrupted, or are not expected at that instant. A corrupt message, for example, is a message with a wrong sender or with a faulty CRC. An unexpected message, for example, is an "Open" command, when the controllers are already connected.
EarlyMsgs	Counter (32-bit resolution) for received messages which are not in the correct sequence. If a message drops out and is lost at the addressee, there is a gap in the received messages, and the next message comes early.
Receive Tmo	Receive Timeout as entered by the user (see Define Peer-to-Peer Parameters on page 13-13).
ResendTMO	Resend Timeout as set by the profile.
AckTmo	Acknowledge Timeout as set by the profile.
CurKeVer	CRC for the Peer-to-Peer configuration. Identical to the Peer-to-Peer system signal "Version" (see page 13-8).
NewKeVer	Reserved for future use.

Reconfigure ResponseTime

The ResponseTime initially configured in Define Peer-to-Peer Parameters on page 13-13 was derived from theoretical considerations and was chosen conservatively, to start the network running. The ResponseTime actually needed is usually much smaller than the theoretical value and can be optimized to improve network performance.

To optimize the ResponseTime:

1. Open the Control Panels for all controllers in the project and select *P2P State*. Position the horizontal slider so that you can read the ResponseTime.

📴 Control Panel [RobotA]											
PADT Resource Communication Test Mode Extra Help											
<i>₽, 1</i> 2 () ■ ∰ (1)											
Resource State Safety Parameters Statistics P2P State Distributed I/O HH State Environment Data OS FP2P State											
Resource System.Rack State	RspT last [ms]	RspTa	vg. [ms]	RspT min. [ms]	RspT max	MsgNo	AckMsgNa	DataSec			
RobotB 60001.0 Connected	12		11	5	19	89312	89311	23776			
Control Panel [RobotB]											
PADT Resource Communication Test Mode Extra Help											
<i>₽ 7</i> 2 [) ■ <u>a</u> 1 ()											
Resource State Safety Parameters Statistics P2P State Distributed I/O HH State Environment Data OS IP Settings											
Resource System, Rack State	RspT last [ms]	Bsp T a	va. Imst	RspT min. [ms]	RspT max	к. [ms] М	1saNo Ack	MsaNo D			
RobotA 60000.0 Connecte	d 11		10	5	20	8	9274 8	3273 2			

2. Compare the RspT avg of two linked controllers for the forward and return path. Values for RspT avg may jump a bit.

Watch both readings for a couple of seconds and pick the largest value. Your reading need not be accurate to the millisecond.

Note down the larger of both values.

The example on page 13-22 shows RespT avg for Robot $A \rightarrow$ Robot B (11 ms) and Robot $B \rightarrow$ Robot A (10 ms).

3. Compare the RspT max of two linked controllers for the forward and return paths.

Note down the larger of both values.

The example on page 13-22 shows RspT max for Robot $A \rightarrow Robot B$ (19 ms) and Robot $B \rightarrow Robot A$ (20 ms). **4.** In the *P2P State* tab, check the entries for Resends and EarlyMsgs.

If the entries for both Resends and EarlyMsgs are 0, no messages have been repeated. In this case, delete the noted RspT avg.

If one or more entries for Resends or EarlyMsgs is not 0, messages have been repeated. In this case, delete the noted RspT max.

📴 Control Panel [RobotA]											
PADT Resource Communication Test Mode Extra Help											
<i>₽, 1</i> ? (▶ ■ 🗿 (1)											
Resource State Safety Parameters Statistics P2P State Distributed I/O HH State Environment Data OS	IP Settings										
Parameter Rest Custom Rack Chate Red Rd Rd Rd Rd Rd Rd Roameter Rest Mars Rest Mars Rest Mars Rest Work	RecordTMO for										
Insulates system and state instraining with a property neserius graumsus canyings necerveriano (iiis) in Robert Connected in 1 and 1 a 1 a 1 a 1 a 10 a 10 a 10 a 10 a 10	100										
Control Panel [RobotB]											
PADT Resource Communication Test Mode Extra Help											
<i>₹ 7</i> 2 → = gi 1 1 →											
Resource State Safety Parameters Statistics P2P State Distributed I/0 HH State Environment Data OS IP Settings											
Resource System Rack State Rs R R R M Ad D Opens Resends BadMsgs EarlyMsgs ReceiveTMO [ms]	ResendTMO (m										
RobotA 60000.0 Connected 10 11 5 20 22 22 57. 1 0 0 0 500	100										

5. Enter the remaining noted value for RspT, either avg or max, in the ResponseTime of the Peer-to-Peer Editor.

	🖉 Peer-to-Peer Editor [RobotA]												
<u> </u> C	Delete Peer-to-Peer Connection Connect Process Signals Connect System Signals HH-Network-Configuration Help												
		Resource	Worst Case	Network	Profile		Response Time [ms]	ReceiveTMO [ms]	Resend	TMO [ms]	AckTMO [ms]	ProdRate [ms]	Queue
1		RobotB	700	HH-Network_1	Fast & Noisy		100	500	100		0	0	2

Reconfigure Receive Timeout

1. Set the new ReceiveTMO to:

ReceiveTMO = $2 \times \text{ResponseTime}$

- **2.** The Worst Case Reaction Time is optimized and displayed in the Peer-to-Peer Editor (see above).
- **3.** Compile the project and download the routines in the controllers again. Start and test your application.
Communicating with ASCII Devices

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
connecting the controller to an ASCII device	14-1
configuring the ASCII port	14-4
connecting signals	14-5
ASCII protocol	14-6

Connecting the Controller to an ASCII Device

For the sole purpose of sending the status of the signals from the GuardPLC to an external device, you can connect an intelligent ASCII device to the GuardPLC serial port. This ASCII connection is one-way from the GuardPLC (slave) to the master device. You cannot program the GuardPLC or change the values in the GuardPLC using this port.

To use the ASCII function, signals that you wish to send out the serial port must be connected to placeholders in the ASCII-protocol Connect Signals window. These signals are then capable of being sent out the serial port if a command string is properly received from the master. The command string includes a starting address and number of signals to be sent. The GuardPLC replies to this command string by sending the values of these signals out the serial port in an ASCII string.

Connecting to a GuardPLC 1200 Controller



Use a 1761-CBL-PM02 series C cable to connect to the serial port. The mini-DIN connector attaches to the controller. The other end is a 9-pin D-shell connector. This mini-DIN connector is not commercially available, so you cannot make this cable.

Connecting to a GuardPLC 1600 or 1800 Controller

The ASCII COMM3 port location and connector pin assignment are shown below.



Connection	Signal	Function
1		
2	RP	5V, decoupled with diodes
3	RxD/TxD-A	Receive/Transmit data A
4	CNTR-A	Control Signal A
5	DGND	Data reference potential
6	VP	5V, positive pole of supply voltage
7		
8	RxD/TxD-B	Receive/Transmit data B
9	CNTR-B	Control Signal B

IMPORTANT

The ASCII port is RS-485. You must use and electrical interface device to connect the controller to an RS-232 device.



Connecting to a GuardPLC 2000 Controller

The serial port requires a 9-pin D-shell connector.

Pin:	Function:
1	none
2	send data
3	receive data
4	none
5	ground
6	none
7	RTS
8	CTS
9	none

Configuring the ASCII Serial Port

You must either create a new project or open an existing project before you can configure ASCII communications. Once the software opens a project, it automatically displays the Hardware Management window, from which you configure the ASCII port.

1. Right-click on *Protocols* and select *New* \rightarrow *ASCII*.



2. Right-click on the ASCII icon and select Properties.



For this field:	Specify:
Slave Address	the slave address (1 to 65535) of the controller. The ASCII protocol of the controller supports only a direct point-to-point connection between the master and slave.
	The controller is always configured as slave. It only transfers process values via the serial interface to the master when it receives the corresponding request from the master.
Refresh Rate	the refresh rate in milliseconds for non-safe communication between the COM and CPU.
	The default is 0, the fastest refresh rate.
Interface	select the field bus interface to be used by the ASCII protocol (comm1, comm2, comm3).
	Select comm3 for GuardPLC 1600 or 1800 controllers.
Baud Rate ⁽¹⁾	the data transfer speed in bits/s. Select from a dropdown menu of predefined values between 300 and 115,200 bps. The default baud rate is 9600 bps.
Parity	the parity for the recognition of transfer errors. Select No, Odd, or Even. The default is No parity.
Stop Bit	either 1 or 2 stop bits for the serial data transfer. The default is 1 stop bit.

(1) Even if the baud rate is changed from 9600, the power up string is always sent out at 9600 baud.

Connecting Signals

Only ASCII output signals are sent from the controller. You connect signals to the ASCII outputs to determine which signal values you want to send from the controller to the connected ASCII device.

1. Expand *Protocols*. Right-click on the *ASCII* icon and select *Connect Signals*.

🚹 RSLogix Guard PLUS Har	dware Management		
Project Edit Signals Online	<u>W</u> indows <u>H</u> elp		
🖻 🎦 example1			
🖨 📕 Configuration			
🖻 🔀 [2] Resource			
🗄 - 🧰 Distributed	/0		
🖻 🧰 Protocols			
	Connect Circula		
- Upeinsta	Connect Signals		
H- Culor Guarde	New >		
Frogramming Ferr	⊆opy		
O Token Group	Paste		
- O Token Group	Delete	Signal Connections [/Conliguration/[2] Resource/Protocols/ASCII]	ㅋ미즤
	Print	New Connected Signal Delete Connected Signal New Offsets Help	
-	Dramatica	Inputs Outputs	
_	Propercies	Name Type Size Offset Signal	
		1 Connected Signal BOOL 1 0	
			///
	Properties	Name Type Size Olfset Signal 1 Connected Signal BOOL 1 0	

If you want to:	Select this tab:
create a new signal	New Connected Signal
renumber offsets sequentially for all signals	New Offsets
delete the selected signal	Delete Connected Signal

- 2. Edit the output signals you want to send to the ASCII device.
 - Use the *Outputs* tab to define output values to send to the ASCII device.
 - Associate each output with a signal from the signal editor by dragging the signal from the Signal Editor to the *Signal* field on the *Outputs* tab in the ASCII Signal Connections Window.
 - See Chapter 5 for more information about defining signals.

📝 Signa	l Connections [/	Configuratio	on/[4]] GPLC2	:000_1/Protoc		📝 Signa	al Editor Filter	*					١×
New C	onnected Signal 🛛 D	elete Connect	ed Sig	nal N	ew Offsets Help		🛛 New S	ignal 🛛 Delete S	ignal 🛛 H	elp				
Inputs	Outputs						-	Name	Туре	Retain	Constant	Description	Init Value	
	Name	Туре	Size	Offset	Signal		4	Out_3	INT					1
1	TX_CounterValue	UDINT	4	0	Cnt01Value		5	Out_4	INT					1
2	TX_UpCounter	INT	2	4	Incrementor		6	Cnt01ResetRe	BOOL					1
	A						7	Cnt01Value	UDINT					1
						/	8	GrayValue	INT					1
			_	_			9	Incrementor	INT					1
							10	OutRange	BOOL					1—
							11	SpeedToggle	BOOL					1
							12	Takt	BOOL].
								a						

NOTE: The signal name is only used in printouts.

TIP

The offset in the ASCII output section is numbered based on bytes. In the example, the first signal uses bytes 0, 1, 2, and 3. The second signal uses bytes 4 and 5. However, when you request these signals in the command string (see ASCII master - request below), the first signal is always 0, the second signal is always 1, the third signal is always 2, etc.

The output section automatically sorts the name field based on alphanumerical order. This does not automatically change the offsets, but if you renumber after sorting, the offsets will change and there is no undo feature. This changes the order in which the signals are sent out the serial port.

Since names are only used in printouts, you may want to enter these names in alphanumeric order to begin with. (For example signal 101, signal 102, signal 103, signal 104, etc.)

ASCII Protocol

The controller is a slave ASCII device and expects this protocol from the master device.

ASCII master - request

If the ASCII master sends a request, the slave can send a response. The master request has this format (each character is one byte):

Start Sign	Destination	Source	Function Code	Start Address	Number of Variables	End Sign
1 char	2 char	2 char	1 char	5 char	3 char	1 char

Component:	Description:
Start Sign	identifies the start of a message ^ character
Destination	unique slave address (GuardPLC controller) 01 to 99
Source	unique master address (requester) 01 to 99
Function Code	read data R character
Start Address	data start address for characters to read (offset) 00000 to 65535
Number of Variables	number of variables to read and send back to master 000 to 999
End Sign	identifies the end of a message & character

For example, this string requests the first two variables from the slave:

Start Sign	Destination	Source	Function Code	Start Address	Number of Variables	End Sign
٨	15	01	R	00000	002	&

ASCII slave - controller response

If the controller receives a request from an ASCII master, it responds in this format (each character is one byte):

Start Sign	Destination	Source	Function Code	Start Address	Number of Variables	Number of Characters	Data	End Sign
1 char	2 char	2 char	1 char	5 char	3 char	4 char	maximum 10000 char	1 char

Component:	Description:
Start Sign	identifies the start of a message ^ character
Destination	unique master address (requester) 01 to 99
Source	unique slave address (GuardPLC controller) 01 to 99
Function Code	r character identifies data sent by slave E identifies error with master request
Start Address	data start address for characters to read (offset) 00000 to 65535
Number of Variables	number of variables to read and send back to master 000 to 999
Number of Characters	number of characters in the data string (This includes the "/" delimiter but not the "&" termination character.) 0000 to 9999
Data	data characters
End Sign	needed to recognize the end of a message & character

Start Sign	Destination	Source	Function Code	Start Address	Number of Variables	Number of Characters	Data	End Sign
٨	01	15	r	00000	002	0005	4/123	&

For example, this string replies to the master request for the first two variables from the slave:

Every data field in the message is separated with a slash (/). The slash also counts as a character when counting the total number of characters in the data string.

TIP

The reply string will have a variable number of characters if non-BOOL are used. For example, 99 is 2 characters, 100 is 3 characters. There is no leading zero.

If the master request was not received properly at the GuardPLC, the slave response is the following:

Start Sign	Destination	Source	Function Code	Start Address	Number of Variables	Number of Characters	End Sign
٨	01	15	E	00000	000	0000	&

This error response is typically sent when more signals are requested than exist in the ASCII protocol output tab. For example, 10 signals were dragged to the ASCII output section, but 20 signals were requested in the command string.

Data type formats

Data Type:	Format:		Example:
BOOL	Description: Size: Range:	boolean 1 character 1 = true; 0 = false	0 1
SINT	Description: Size: Range:	short integer 1 to 4 characters -128 to 127	-101 5 127 -128
INT	Description: Size: Range:	integer 1 to 6 characters -32768 to 32767	-25724 232 -6 248
DINT	Description: Size: Range:	double integer 1 to 11 characters -2147483648 to 2147483647	-1357679042 257 6200471
USINT	Description: Size: Range:	unsigned short integer 1 to 3 characters 0 to 255	123 35 6 255
UINT	Description: Size: Range:	unsigned integer 1 to 5 characters 0 to 65535	65535 7 333 597
UDINT	Description: Size: Range:	unsigned double integer 1 to 10 characters 0-4294967295	4294967295 256 334510

Follow these formats for sending different data types:

Communicating with Modbus and Profibus Devices

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
connecting the controller to a Modbus device	15-2
configuring the Modbus port	15-2
connecting signals	15-3
Modbus protocol	15-5
connecting the controller to a Profibus DP device	15-5
configuring the Profibus DP port	15-6
connecting signals	15-7
configuring the Profibus Master	15-8

Modbus RTU Slave

Modbus is only available on GuardPLC 1600 or 1800 controllers. You can connect a Modbus master to the controller's COMM1 port. This Modbus connection is two-way non-safety-related communication between the controller (slave) and the master device. You cannot program the controller using this port.

The controller is a Modbus RTU slave device and only responds to reads and writes from the master.

To use the Modbus function, signals that you wish to send out/receive into the COMM1 port must be connected to placeholders in the Modbus-protocol Connect Signals window.



Connecting the Controller to a Modbus Device

Connection	Signal	Function
1		
2	RP	5V, decoupled with diodes
3	RxD/TxD-A	Receive/Transmit data A
4	CNTR-A	Control Signal A
5	DGND	Data reference potential
6	VP	5V, positive pole of supply voltage
7		
8	RxD/TxD-B	Receive/Transmit data B
9	CNTR-B	Control Signal B

IMPORTANT

The Modbus port is RS-485. You must use an electrical interface device to connect the controller to an RS-232 device.

Configuring the Modbus Serial Port

You must either create a new project or open an existing project before you can configure Modbus communications. Once the software opens a project, it automatically displays the Hardware Management window, from which you configure the Modbus port.

1. Right-click on *Protocols* and select *New* \rightarrow *Modbus Slave*.

-	
RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware	Management
Project Edit Signals Online Window	vs <u>H</u> elp
🖻 🏣 example 1	
🚖- 🚄 Configuration	
🖻 🔀 [2] Resource	
🗄 - 🧰 Distributed I/O	
🖭 🧰 Protocols	Maria A San A
🎞 TypeInstance	PZ Profibus dp Slave
🗄 - 🧱 [0] GuardPLC 1600	COPY Mathematica Modbus Slave
	Paste
⊨- 🗄 HH-Network_1	Delete
- O Token Group	Brink
O Token Group_1	Ener
	Properties

- RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Manag Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help 🕻 /Configuration/Resource/Protocols/Modbus Sla... 💶 🗖 🔀 🎦 example1 Configuration Modbus Slave Туре ≟- № [2] Resource ≟- C Distributed I/O Slave Address Б Protocols
 AZASCII
 Modbus Slave Refresh Rate [ms] Interface -Connect Signals Ŧ Baud rate 57600 TypeInstance New - 🧱 [0] GuardPLC 1600 Parity Even -Programming Terminal ⊆ору Cancel Apply <u>0</u>K <u>H</u>elp Paste --- O Token Group --- O Token Group_1 <u>D</u>elete Print. Properties
- **2.** Expand *Protocols*. Right-click on the *Modbus Slave* icon and select *Properties*.

For this field:	Specify:	
Slave Address	the slave address (1 to 247) of the controller. The Modbus protocol of the controller supports only a direct point-to-point connection between the master and slave.	
	The controller is always configured as slave. It only transfers process values via the serial interface to the master when it receives the corresponding request from the master.	
Interface	select the field bus interface to be used by the Modbus Slave protocol (comm1, comm2, comm3).	
	Select <i>comm1</i> for GuardPLC 1600 or 1800 controllers.	
Refresh Rate	Refresh rate in ms for non-safe communications. The default is 0, the fastest refresh rate.	
Baud Rate	the data transfer speed in bits/s. Select from a dropdown menu of predefined values between 300 and 115,200 bps. The default baud rate is 9600 bps.	
Parity	the parity for the recognition of transfer errors. Select No, Odd, or Even. The default is No parity.	
Stop Bit	either 1 or 2 stop bits for the serial data transfer. The default is 1 stop bit.	

Connecting Signals

The Modbus RTU Slave protocol allows you to read data from the GuardPLC and write data to the GuardPLC, but none of this data can be used for safety functions.

"Inputs" are signals sent from the Modbus master to the controller (slave). "Outputs" are signals sent from the controller (slave) to the master.

To connect signals:

📑 RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Mana Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help New Connected Signal Delete Connected Signal New Offsets Help texample1 Inputs Outputs Configuration - N [2] Resource Туре Size Offset Signal Name Connected Signal BOOL Control Distributed I/O AZASCI Modbu TypeInstance 🗄 🧱 (0) GuardPLC 1600 Programming Terminal HH·Network_1 ⊆ору Token Group - O Token Group_1 Delete Print.. Properties

If you want to:	Select this tab:
create a new signal	New Connected Signal
renumber offsets sequentially for all signals	New Offsets
delete the selected signal	Delete Connected Signal

- 2. Edit the signals you want to receive or send.
 - Use the *Inputs* tab to determine which values to read into the controller.
 - Use the *Outputs* tab to define output values to send to the Modbus master. Signals in the output tab must match the order of signal types requested by the Modbus master.
 - Associate each input or output with a signal from the signal editor. You can drag and drop signals from the signal editor to the signal connections dialog.

The Modbus function calls must match the order in which the signal offsets appear. For example, if you want to read 3 Boolean signals followed by 4 Registers, the first 3 signals must be "BOOL" and the next 4 must be "INT" signals.

1. Expand *Protocols*. Right-click on the *Modbus Slave* icon and select *Connect Signals*.

TIP

The offset in the Modbus output section is numbered based on bytes. When you request these signals, the first signal is always 0, the second signal is always 1, the third signal is always 2, etc.

The output section automatically sorts the name field based on alphanumerical order. This does not automatically change the offsets, but if you renumber after sorting, the offsets will change and there is no undo feature. This changes the order in which the signals are sent out the serial port.

Since names are only used in printouts, you may want to enter these names in alphanumeric order to begin with. (For example signal 101, signal 102, signal 103, signal 104, etc.)

Profibus DP Slave

Profibus DP Slave protocol is only available via the GuardPLC 1600 and 1800 controller's COMM1 port. This connection is two-way non-safety-related communication from the controller (slave) to the master device. You cannot program the controller using this port.

To use the Profibus DP function, signals that you wish to send out the COMM1 port must be connected to placeholders in the Profibus DP-protocol Connect Signals window.



Connecting the Controller to a Profibus DP Device

Connection	Signal	Function
1		
2	RP	5V, decoupled with diodes
3	RxD/TxD-A	Receive/Transmit data A
4	CNTR-A	Control Signal A
5	DGND	Data reference potential
6	VP	5V, positive pole of supply voltage
7		
8	RxD/TxD-B	Receive/Transmit data B
9	CNTR-B	Control Signal B

IMPORTANT

The Profibus port is RS-485. You must use an electrical interface device to connect the controller to an RS-232 device.

Configuring the Profibus DP Serial Port

You must either create a new project or open an existing project before you can configure Profibus DP communications. Once the software opens a project, it automatically displays the Hardware Management window, from which you configure the Profibus port.

1. Right-click on *Protocols* and select *New* \rightarrow *Profibus dp Slave*.



2. Expand *Protocols*. Right-click on the *Profibus dp Slave* icon and select *Properties*.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Management			
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help			
🖻 🎦 example1			
🖶 🔟 Configuration			
🗄 🔀 [2] Resource			
🗄 - 🧰 Distributed I/O			
🗐 - 🧰 Protocols			
Profibus dp Slave			
🚺 TypeInstance	Connect Signals		
😟 📻 [0] GuardPLC 1600	<u>N</u> ew ►		
	Copy		
HH-Network_1	Bacho		
O Token Group	rgoue		
- O Token Group_1	<u>D</u> elete		
	Print		
	Properties		

P /Configuratio	n/Resource/Protocols/Profibus dp,	
Туре	Profibus dp Slave	
Station address	0	÷
Refresh Rate [ms]	10	
Interface		•
Baud rate	invalid	•
<u></u> K	Cancel Apply Help	

For this field:	Specify:	
Station Address	the address which uniquely identifies the Profibus dp slave on the network.	
	The station address must be less than or equal to 126.	
Refresh Rate	Refresh rate in ms for non-safe communications. The default is 0, the fastest refresh rate.	
Interface	select the field bus interface to be used by the Profibus dp Slave protocol (comm1, comm2, comm3).	
	Select comm1 for GuardPLC 1600 or 1800 controllers.	
Baud Rate	the data transfer speed in bits/s. Select from a dropdown menu of predefined values between 300 and 115,200 bps. The default baud rate is 9600 bps.	

Connecting Signals

The Profibus DP Slave protocol allows you to read data from the GuardPLC and write data to the GuardPLC, but none of this data can be used for safety functions.

"Inputs" are signals sent from the Profibus master to the controller (slave). "Outputs" are signals sent from the controller (slave) to the master.

1. Expand *Protocols*. Right-click on the *Profibus-dp Slave* icon and select *Connect Signals*.

🚰 RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Manag	jement									
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help		29	Signal Connect	tions [/Co	onfigura	tion,	/[6000	0]Res	ource/P	rot 💶 🗖 🗡
- Te example1		<u></u>	ew Connected S	i gnal Deli	lete Conn	ected	Signal	New	Offsets	Help
🖃 🔟 Configuration		Inp	outs Outputs	1						
🗄 🔀 [2] Resource			Name	[T	vpe	Size	Offset	Signal		
🗄 🗀 Distributed I/O		1	Current b	aud rate UI	DINT 4	4	0			
E Protocols		2	Data valio	3 BC	00L -	1	11			
P. Profibus dp Slave	Connect Signals	3	Error code	e D\	WORD 4	4	4			
TypeInstance	Connect signals	4	Master ID	· US	SINT	1	10			
E E UJ GuardPLC 1600	<u>N</u> ew ►	5	Protocol S	State B1	YTE -	1	8			
Programming Leminal	⊆ору	6	Slave ID	US	SINT	1	9			
	Paste	7	Connecte	d Signal BC	00L '	1	0			
Dicken Group 1	Delete									
	Print					_	_	_		///
	Describer									
_	Properties									

If you want to:	Select this tab:
create a new signal	New Connected Signal
renumber offsets sequentially for all signals	New Offsets
delete the selected signal	Delete Connected Signal

- 2. Edit the signals you want to receive or send:
 - Use the *Inputs* tab to determine which values to read into the controller. The *Inputs* tab contains pre-defined system variables which can be interrogated via the assignment of signals.
 - Use the *Outputs* tab to define output values to send to the Profibus master.
 - Associate each input or output with a signal from the signal editor. You can drag and drop signals from the signal editor to the signal connections dialog.

🛃 Signa	Connections [/Config	uration/[250] Re	sourc	e_2/Pro	otoco 🗖 🗖	×				
New Connected Signal Delete Connected Signal New				New O	ffsets 🛛 H	lelp					
Toolbar	Outputs										
	Name	Туре	Size	Offse	t Signal						
1	Current baud rate	UDINT	4	0	Current	_baud_rate					
2	Data valid	BOOL	1	11	Data_v	alid					
3	Error code	DWORD	4	4	Error or	nda					
4	Master ID	USINT	1	10	🖉 Signa	l Connections	5 [/Confi	guration/	[250] R	esourc	e_2/Protoco
5	Protocol State	BYTE	1	8	New Co	onnected Signal	I Delete (Connected	Signal	New 0	ffsets Help
6	Slave ID	USINT	1	9	lum sta	Outpute					
7	z_Profibus_In_01	UINT	2	16	inputs	Outputs					
8	z_Profibus_In_02	UINT	2	12		Name		Туре	Size	Offset	Signal
9	z_Profibus_In_03	UINT	2	14	1	Ctrl_To_Prof_1	Master_01	UINT	2	0	Ctrl_To_Prof_Master_01
					2	Ctrl_To_Prof_1	Master_02	UINT	2	2	Ctrl_To_Prof_Master_02
				Ĩ	3	Ctrl_To_Prof_1	Master_03	UINT	2	4	Ctrl_To_Prof_Master_03
				Ĩ	4	Ctrl_To_Prof_1	Master_04	UINT	2	6	Ctrl_To_Prof_Master_04
				Ĩ	5	Ctrl_To_Prof_1	Master_05	UINT	2	8	Ctrl_To_Prof_Master_05
				[6	Pressure_1		REAL	4	10	Pressure_1
				É							

• Click on *New Offsets* to automatically calculate the offsets for the new signals.

IMPORTANT Due to the offsets of the system variables, the offset of the first input signal must begin with 12. The offset for the first output signal begins with 0.

The Profibus ID for the first input signal is 0.

Configuring the Profibus Master

For both the Profibus output and input signals, the Profibus ID of the first signal to communicate, the number of signals, and the number of bytes must be configured in the Profibus Master.

Configuration is accomplished via parameter data read from a GSD file. The parameter data consist of 32 bytes in hexadecimal format which may be displayed in different ways depending upon the Profibus DP master software.

For more information on using Profibus protocol, consult the online Help.

Pulse Testing

Line control is a short-circuit and line break monitoring system (e.g., E-Stop inputs) which utilizes pulse testing. Line control can be configured for the following GuardPLC controllers and distributed I/O:

- GuardPLC 1600
- GuardPLC 2000/1755-IB24XOB16
- 1753-IB16
- 1753-IB20XOB8

Line control cannot be configured on the GuardPLC 1200, GuardPLC 1800, and the 1753-OB16 output-only module. The GuardPLC 1800 is excluded because it features digital inputs that are actually analog inputs with 1-bit resolution.

TIP

Pulse testing can still be performed on the GuardPLC 1200 and 1800, but software certified function blocks are required. These blocks perform exactly the same function in software as line control does via software configuration.

See the *Certified Function Block Safety Reference Manual*, publication number 1753-RM001, for more information on the Single Pulse Test Output (SPTO) and Redundant Pulst Test Output (RPTO) certified function blocks.

Wiring for Line Control

GuardPLC 1600 and 1753-IB20XOB8

Up to 8 digital outputs (DO1 to DO8) can be configured as pulsed outputs. The example below shows 2 pulse outputs connected to the digital inputs (DI) of the same system. As a result, the connections to the digital inputs (DI) are monitored.



The digital outputs DO1 and DO2 are pulsed (briefly set to low) so that the connections to the digital inputs are monitored. The duration of the test can be configured in the range of 5 to 2000 μ s with a default value of 400 μ s.

1753-IB16

For Line Control, the 1753-IB16 has four digital pulse test sources (PO) connected to the following terminals:

Terminal Number	Designation	Function
25	L-	Reference pole
26	1	Pulsed source 1
27	2	Pulsed source 2
28	3	Pulsed source 3
29	4	Pulsed source 4
30	L-	Reference pole

The example below shows 2 pulse test sources connected to the digital inputs (DI) of the same system. As a result, the connections to the digital inputs (DI) are monitored.



Response to Faults

When the following occurs, inputs are set to 0, a fault code is generated, and the FAULT LED is on.

- short-circuit between two parallel connections
- reversal of two connections
- earth fault on one of the lines (only with earthed reference pole)
- line break or opening of the contacts (e.g., when one of the E-stop off switches is pressed in the example above), the FAULT LED is on and the fault code is generated.

TIP

If multiple errors exist at the same time, the error code is the sum of the individual error codes.

Configuration for Line Control

Required Signals

Set up the following signals using the *Outputs* tab of the digital inputs Signal Connections window in RSLogix Guard PLUS:

Name	Description	Туре	Initial Value	Notes
Number of Pulse Channels	Number of pulse outputs being used	USINT	1 to 8	1 to 4 for 1753-IB16 1 to 8 for GuardPLC 1600/2000 1 to 8 for 1753-IB20X0B8
Pulse Slot	Slot occupied by the module with the pulsed outputs	UDINT	1 or 2	2 for GuardPLC 1600 2 for 1753-IB20X0B8 1 for 1753-IB16 1 to 6 for GuardPLC 2000 (wherever 1755-IB24X0B16 is located)
Pulse Delay	Pulse delay is both the low pulse width and pulse test duration.	UINT	400 (default)	Values in µs from 5 to 2000.
Error Code	Error code for each switch	BYTE	N/A	See page B-11 for error code descriptions.
Value	Value for each switch	BOOL		
DI[xx].PulseChannel	Indicates which pulse output is sourcing the input channel	USINT	1 to 8	1 to 4 for 1753-IB16 1 to 8 for GuardPLC 1600/2000 1 to 8 for 1753-IB20X0B8
DO[xx].Value	Initialization value for the pulse outputs	BOOL	TRUE	Each pulse output must be activated.

Pulse Outputs

The pulse outputs must begin at DO[01] and must be sequential. For example, if two pulse outputs are required, they must be DO[01] and DO[02].

Inputs

IMPORTANT To prevent crosstalk, two directly adjacent inputs must not be sourced from the same pulse output.

Creating User-Defined Function Blocks

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
creating user-defined function blocks	17-2
declaring variables	17-5
moving declared variables to the user-defined function block page	17-10
generating function block code	17-11

Creating User-Defined Function Blocks

With RSLogix Guard PLUS software, you can create user-defined function blocks that consist of standard function block logic, as shown in the illustrations below.



Existing Function Block

To create a function block:

1. In the Program Management Window, right-click on *Configuration* and select *New* \rightarrow *Library*.



2. Right-click on the new Library and select *New* \rightarrow *Function Block Type* to create the new function block. You can rename the new function block by right-clicking on it and selecting *Rename*.





3. Double-click the new function block to start the editor.

The FBD editor for user-defined function blocks differs slightly from the FBD editor for routines. The components of the editor are:

Use this component:	То:
Overview Window	displays the function block diagram in reduced scale.
Drawing field	create the logic of the FB-type.
Variable declaration editor (only in FB type editor)	create and define internal variables of a block and initialize them for further use.
Interface declaration editor (only in FB type editor)	define the graphical appearance of a block. The appearance of the block will match the appearance of the user-defined function block in the FBD Editor.

IMPORTANT

You cannot place an instance of a user-defined function block within itself.

Declaring variables

Variable declaration defines the connecting points of the function block. There are tabs for these types of variables.

Use this tab:	To define:			
VAR	an internal variable without type limitations.			
	You can also define the attribute: CONST a constant value that cannot be changed by logic			
VAR_INPUT	an input variable, which is also displayed on the block.			
VAR_OUTPUT	an output variable, which is also displayed on the block.			
VAR_EXTERNAL	a global variable that can also be used and edited within function blocks or functions. Value changes are also visible to the outside.			
ACTION	an action block. Action blocks describe what action should be performed and which behavior should trigger it.			

Valid data types for variables are: BOOL, BYTE, DATE, DATE_AND_TIME, DINT, DWORD, INT, LREAL, REAL, SINT, STRING, TIME, TIME_OF_DAY, UDINT, UINT, USINT, WORD. The default type is BOOL.

The controller handles REAL values as float values and LREAL values as double values.

To declare a variable, select the tab for the type of variable from the user-defined FBD editor. Right-click in any blank area and select *New Variable*.

	New		
	Sort	⊧	
	Find/Replace		
	Find		
	Filter Undo Filter		
	Export Import		
	Print Export to Text File		
	View	•	
1	Expand All Collapse All		
VAR	Match Variables		OUTPUT V4
Name A	Help		itial value
<u></u>			

ariable Declaration : sample1	
VAR- Declaration (direct input) Name: Vari Declaration: BOOL	Declaration (dialog driven) Derivation types <u>Direct</u> Subrange Array Egumeration
Position Position: Position: Inverted alternate I/O-identifier	Techn. unit/scaling Techn. unit: min. value: min. value: internally represented as
Long name: Attributes BYBEF Physical address: CONST RETAIN	Comment:
Add Ugdate Delete Und	do <u>C</u> lose Help

You can either define the variable here or use the Derivation Type buttons (recommended). The Derivation Type buttons activate dialogs to help declare a variable of the selected type. Use these buttons to ensure accurate syntax.

This button:	Defines a variable type:
This button: Direct	Defines a variable type: derived directly from another variable type Variable Declaration - Direct Derivation : sample LVar1 Var1 Type: UBODL BODL BODL BODL BODL BODL BODL BODL
	OK Cancel Undo

This button:	Defines a variable type:
Array	array of one or more dimensions
	Variable Declaration - Array : sample 1.Var1 Name: Variable Upe: DINT BOOL BYTE DATE DATE DINT BOOL Statindex: Initial value: Initial value:
	For example: ARRAY:array[110] of INT • one-dimensional array of INT values • ARRAY[7] accesses the 7th element ARRAY:array[110,110] of REAL • two-dimensional array of REAL values • ARRAY[3,5] accesses the 3rd element of the 5th row
Subrange	has values that should be within a certain range
	Variable Declaration - Subrange : sample 1.Var 1 Image: Variation - Subrange : sample 1.Var 1 Image: Variation - Subrange : subrange = variation value: Image: Variation value: Image: Image: Variation value: Image: Image: Image: Variation value: Image:
Enumeration	not vet implemented

Publication 1753-UM001A-EN-P - April 2004

Defining Technical Units and Scaling

You can define technical units and scaling for each variable:

In this field:	Define:	
Techn. unit	an available unit from the pulldown menu	
min. value max. value	reference points to convert a technical unit into an internal value For example:	
internally represented as	 technical unit internal representation 	from 0 to 24V from 0 to 1000
	Enter floating point numbers for the scaling.	

The available technical units are:

Abbreviation:	Unit:	Definition:
А	Ampere	electrical current
Bq	Bequerel	activity of a radioactive source, disintegration rate
С	Colomb	electrical charge
cd	Candela	light intensity
F	Farad	capacitance
Gy	Gray	absorbed dose
Н	Henry	inductance
Hz	Hertz	frequency
J	Joule	energy
K	Kelvin	temperature (in Kelvin)
kg	Kilogram	mass
lm	Lumen	illumination
lx	Lux	illumination density
m	Meter	length
mol	Mol	amount of substance
Ν	Newton	force
Ohm	Ohm	electrical resistance
Pa	Pascal	pressure
Rad	Radiant	plane angle
S	Siemens	electrical conductance
S	Second	time
sr	sRadiant	solid angle
Т	Tesla	magnetic flux density
V	Volt	electrical potential
W	Watt	power
Wb	Weber	magnetic flux

Defining I/O Positions

For input and output variables, you need to define the variables' positions on the function block. The position portion of the variable declaration display is only available for input and output variables. You can define:

In this field:	Define:
Connection	the side of the block (left, top, right, or bottom) to which the input or output should be connected
Position	the position of the input or output within the block
Inverted	whether to invert I/O of data type BOOL
	You can only invert BOOL data. Inversions are indicated by a circle around the I/O.
Alternate I/O identifier	an I/O-name
	This name appears in the block, rather than the generated name.

How the Variables Display

Once you declare your variable, the editor displays the variables.

VAR	VAR INPUT 🗍 V	AR OUTPUT ÍVAR	i external) 🛛 actio)N
Name 🛆	Declaration	Initial value	Longname +	Attribute 🔺
□ →Var1	BOOL	TRUE	Long text for Variable 1	
⊷www.Var2	BOOL	TRUE	Long text for Variable 2	
🖶 Var3	BOOL	TRUE	Long text for Variable 3	
📼 Var4	BOOL	TRUE	Long text for Variable 4	
💠 Var5	BOOL	TRUE	Long text for Variable 5	•
Ĩ	1			Þ

The editor uses these symbols to identify the variables:

Symbol:	Definition:
⇔	used as source The variable is read from.
÷	used as sink The variable is written to.
-	used as source and sink The variable is read from and written to. Variables used in different types of connections are also identified by this symbol.
	not used as source or sink; but the variable is set in the function block diagram.
-d(a-	not used The variable is declared but not set in the function block diagram.

Moving Declared Variables to the User-Defined Function Block Page

In order to use these declared variables, you must:

1. Drag them from the Variable Definition Editor to the user-defined function block page.



2. Drag down the required function blocks and make all the necessary connections.



To use the completed user-defined function blocks, you must drag them to the function block page and connect signals to them.

Generating Function Block Code

When you complete your function block logic, you must compile that logic into code the controller can execute. In the Program Management Window, expand the project. Right-click the Resource and select *Code Generation*.



IMPORTANT

You should save before every Code Generate. A save is required for any change to the function block page.

Any time a change is made, the number of changes displayed on the function block menu bar increments.



When the save is complete, the menu bar displays "unchanged".



The software compiles your function block logic and generates the files that you download to the controller.

IMPORTANT When the code generator compiles logic, it also takes into consideration the settings you specified in the Hardware Management Window. If you change these settings and want the changes to take effect, you must compile and download the project again.

Checking for Errors and Warnings

After performing a code generate, check the status bar at the bottom of the Project Management window. The status bar indicates whether or not a .L2P file was successfully generated.

If a .L2P file was not created, check the Hardware Management Window to view the errors and/or warnings compiled during the process of code generation.

The window below shows an example of code generation warnings.

03/22/2002 10:24:57.786, Info: [Controller1200]:Code generation started 03/22/2002 10:25:38:815, Warning: [Controller1200]:/Controller1200/Hack/[1]AB-DIO AB-DIO: Used Tag '0UT7' has no source 03/22/2002 10:25:38:825, Warning: [Controller1200]:/Controller1200/Hack/[1]AB-DIO AB-DIO: Used Tag '0UT8' has no source 03/22/2002 10:25:39:065, Info: [Controller1200]:Code generation finished, Warnings: 2, Errors: 0

Using High-Speed Counters

This chapter covers using counters in the following systems:

- GuardPLC 1200,
- GuardPLC 1800, or
- GuardPLC 2000 using a 1755-HSC module.

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
counter modes	18-1
configuring counter modules	18-3
using counters in a GuardPLC system	18-1

Counter/Decoder Modes

The counters can be used in the following operating modes:

- counter mode
- decoder mode

The two counters can be used in different modes at the same time.

Counter Mode

Counter Mode is used for counting pulses at speeds up to 1MHz on the GuardPLC 2000 and 100kHz on the GuardPLC 1200 and 1800.

Tips for Using Counters in a GuardPLC System

- **1.** The 5V signal must be between 4.5V and 5.5V, while the 24V signal must be between 13V and 26.4V.
- **2.** The steepness of the falling edge must be at least 1V per microsecond.
- **3.** The low and high signal times must be at least 5 μ s for the GuardPLC 1200 (duty cycle 50% at 100 kHz) and 0.5 μ s for the GuardPLC 2000 (duty cycle 50% at 1 MHz).
- **4.** Shield the cable against noise.

Counter Mode Inputs

Pins	Functions
A1, A2	counting input for pulses (high-signals) with falling edge of the pulses
B1, B2	counting direction input, incrementing the counter with low-signal, decrementing the counter with high-signal
Z1, Z2	resets inputs Resets can be made with a short high-signal. A continuous high-signal blocks the counter. Resets can also be made by the controller program.
C1, C2	has no function (GuardPLC 2000 - 1755-HSC only)
C-	GuardPLC 2000 common reference pole, all pins have electrical continuity
L-	GuardPLC 1800 common reference pole, all pins have electrical continuity
-	GuardPLC 1200 common reference pole, all pins have electrical continuity

Decoder Mode

Decoder Mode is used for safety supervising the inputs by Gray code, but in the application, the bit structure is handled as a normal binary code value. To use this value, it must be converted in the application. The counter inputs can be connected to an incremental encoder with 4-bit binary code to recognize rotation and the direction of rotation.

Decoder Mode Inputs

Pins	Functions
A1, A2	bit 1 (LSB)
B1, B2	bit 2
Z1, Z2	bit 3
C1, C2	bit 4 (GuardPLC 2000 only)
Understanding Counter Module Configuration

Counter Mode/Manual Direction

The simplest mode of operation is pulse counting with Manual Direction. It can be used, for example, in connection with a light barrier where counting events are to be recorded. The direction of counting is determined by the routine.

The count begins at 0 and is incremented or decremented by 1 at each negative transition of the counting pulse. The resolution of the counter is 24 bits. This results in a value range from 0 to 16,777,215.

The counting pulse must be bounce free and must not exceed the maximum frequency of 1 MHz for a GuardPLC 2000 controller or 100 kHz for a GuardPLC 1200 or 1800 controller. The counter input can be set to a voltage of 5V or 24V via the software.

To ensure that the counter functions correctly, the following parameters have to be configured:

Parameter:	Setting:
Cnt[0x].5/24V Mode	true for 24V or false for 5V You must configure this parameter with a constant.
Cnt[0x].Auto Advance Sense	(optional according to routine) false to count only up or only down based upon the direction bit
Cnt[0x].Direction	(optional according to routine) true to decrement (counts from 16,777,215 downward) or false to increment
Cnt[0x].Gray Code	(optional according to routine) false
Cnt[0x].Reset	(optional according to routine) true If this parameter is set to false, the counter value is reset to 0.

Counter Mode/Direction and Reset

In pulse counting with Direction and Reset, the state of input B is evaluated in addition to counter input A.

When the B input has a low signal while the counter recognizes a negative pulse edge at its A input, the value of the counter is incremented by 1. When there is a high signal at the B input, the counter is decremented by 1.

The counter is released or reset via the Z input. The counter is released when there is a constant LOW signal at the Z input. A constant HIGH signal halts the counter and a short-time HIGH signal resets the counter value to 0.

To enable the counter to function correctly, the following parameters have to be configured in the routine:

Parameter:	Setting:
Cnt[0x].5/24V Mode	true for 24V or false for 5V The adjusted level also applies to inputs B and Z. You must configure this parameter with a constant.
Cnt[0x].Auto Advance Sense	true to count up and down simultaneously
Cnt[0x].Direction	true to decrement (counts from 16,777,215 downward) or false to increment (standard setting)
Cnt[0x].Gray Code	false
Cnt[0x].Reset	true If this parameter is set to false, the counter value is reset to 0.

Decoder Mode/Gray Codes

The gray code is a binary code where the code only differs by one bit with two neighboring numbers. Gray codes are useful in mechanical encoders, since a slight change in location only affects one bit. The controller uses a Gray code (4 bits for a GuardPLC 2000 controller or 3 bits for GuardPLC 1200 and 1800 controllers) which has the following structure:

Step:	Gray Code (GuardPLC 2000):	Gray Code (GuardPLC 1200, 1600, and 1800):	Cnt[0x].Value:
0	0000	000	0
1	0001	001	1
2	0011	011	3
3	0010	010	2
4	0110	110	6
5	0111	111	7
6	0101	101	5
7	0100	100	4
8	1100		12
9	1101		13
10	1111		15
11	1110		14
12	1010		10
13	1011		11
14	1001		9
15	1000		8

Each counter input is fed to three internal counters. When a count is accomplished, the values of the three internal counters are compared, and if the three values differ by more than one bit, the measuring result is rejected and *Cnt[Ox].State* indicates an error.

If the measuring result is valid, the system variable *Cnt[0x].Value* contains the associated value (see the above table).

To enable the Gray code decoder to work correctly, the following parameters have to be configured in the routine:

Parameter:	Setting:
Cnt[0x].5/24V Mode	true for 24V or false for 5V The adjusted level also applies to inputs B and Z. You must configure this parameter with a constant.
Cnt[0x].Auto Advance Sense	this setting has no function on the gray code (set to false)
Cnt[0x].Direction	this setting has no function on the gray code (set to false)
Cnt[0x].Gray Code	true
Cnt[0x].Reset	this setting has no function on the gray code (set to true)

Configuring the GuardPLC OPC Server

Using This Chapter

For information about:	See page
selecting an IP address	19-2
adding the controller and OPC server to a project	19-2
configuring the GuardPLC system for OPC communications	19-3
generating code for the OPC server	19-8
going online with the GuardPLC controller	19-8
using the OPC server	19-8

OLE for Process Control (OPC) is a standard interface for exchanging data between different applications. The GuardPLC OPC server provides an Ethernet interface between the GuardPLC system and other systems with OPC interfaces.

This chapter describes the steps required to configure the GuardPLC OPC server to read and write data to an OPC client, in this case, a GuardPLC 1600. RSLogix Guard PLUS is used to create a token group and make an HH network connection between the OPC server and the controller. Signals are connected to the input and output sections of this connection. Signals connected to the output section are sent out of the controller to the OPC server. Signals connected to the input sections are sent from the OPC server to the controller.

To create an XML file for use by the OPC Server, follow the steps below, which are described in detail in the following sections.

- 1. Select the IP Address for the OPC Server.
- **2.** Add the controller and the OPC Server to an RSLogix Guard PLUS project.
- 3. Configure the GuardPLC System for OPC Communication.
- 4. Generate XML Code for the OPC Server.

Select an IP Address

Select an IP address for the OPC Server and the GuardPLC controller. In this example, we used the default IP address of the GuardPLC controller, 192.168.0.99. The IP address of the OPC Server is 192.168.0.216.

Adding the GuardPLC Controller and the OPC Server to the Project

- **1.** In RSLogix Guard PLUS, select *Project* \rightarrow *New*.
- **2.** Enter the name of the project and confirm *OK*. In this example, our project is called "OPCtest". The Hardware Management window opens.
- **3.** In the Hardware Management window, expand *Configuration* so that the Resource is visible. In this example, we renamed the resource to G16OPC01. It is not necessary to rename the resource.
- 4. Right-click on G16OPC01 and select Properties.



- **5.** Change the *SRS* to 60000 and the *Type* to the controller you are using. This example uses a GuardPLC 1600.
- 6. Select *Apply* and check the remaining check boxes. Click *OK*.

	X/Configuration/G160	DPC01	- D ×							
	Туре	GuardPLC 1600	~							
I	Name	G160PC01								
I	System ID [SRS]	60000								
I	Safety Time [ms]	100								
I	Watchdog Time [ms]	50								
I	Main Enable									
I	Autostart	\checkmark								
l	Start/Restart allowed									
l	Loading allowed	$\overline{\mathbf{v}}$								
l	Test Mode allowed	$\overline{\mathbf{v}}$								
l	Online Test allowed	$\overline{\mathbf{v}}$								
l	Forcing allowed	$\overline{\mathbf{v}}$								
l	Stop on Force Timeout	$\overline{\mathbf{v}}$								
l	max. Com. Time Slice [ms]	10								
	Code Generation Version	3	×							
	<u>K</u> ar	ncel <u>Apply</u>	<u>t</u> elp							

7. In the project tree, right-click on *Configuration* and select *New* \rightarrow *OPC-Server*. The OPC server appears in the project tree.



Configuring the GuardPLC System for OPC Communication

Configure the Communication Network

1. In the Hardware Management window, right-click on the *OPCtest Project* and select *New* \rightarrow *HH-Network*.



- 2. Expand the HH-Network.
- 3. Right-click on Token Group and select Node Editor.
- 4. Drag the OPC-Server and G16OPC01 onto the Node Editor.

📴 RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Management												
<u>P</u> roject <u>E</u> dit <u>Signals</u> <u>O</u> nline <u>Wi</u> ndows <u>H</u> elp												
🖻 📲 OPCtest 📕 Node Editor [/HH-Network_1/Token Group]												
🗄 ·· 📕 Configuration	∐ Delete	Node Help										
		Resource	СОМ	IP Device								
🗄 🔀 (60000) G160PC01	1	G160PC01	СОМ	le0								
Programming Terminal	2	OPC Server_1	IP Address	le0								
····· 💭 Token Group												

- **5.** Close the Node Editor.
- 6. Right-click on OPC-Server and select Edit.

7. Drag G16OPC01 onto the OPC-Server Resources Editor.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Management												
<u>Project Edit Signals Online Windov</u>	vs <u>H</u> elp											
🖻 - 🎦 OPCtest	🛃 Resources Edit	or [OPC Server_1]		- D ×								
🖃 🔟 Configuration]] Delete Resource	Connect OPC-Signals	HH-Network-Configuration	Help								
	Resource	SRS										
En Konstanting Terring	1 G160PC0	1 60000										
Programming Terminal												

The Specify HH-Network Configuration for OPC dialog opens. Click *OK*.

Connecting Signals

- **1.** Select the *Signals* pulldown menu from the menu bar and choose *Editor*.
- **2.** Add two new signals:
 - DI1 input sent to the OPC Server
 - DO1 output sent from the OPC Server

I	📝 Signa	al Edito	r Filter:*				×	
l	🛛 New S	ignal 🛛	Delete Sign	ral He	lp			
l		Name	ame Type		Constant	Description	Init Value	Γ
l	1	DI1	BOOL					Γ
	2	DO1 BOOL						1
								1

- **3.** Left-click on *1* in the OPC-Server Resources Editor. Select *Connect OPC-Signals.*
- **4.** Drag *DO1* from the Signal Editor to the Inputs section of the OPC Signal Connections window.

5. Click on the *Outputs* tab. Drag *DI1* from the Signal Editor to the Outputs section of the OPC Signal Connections window.

🛃 Resources Ed	litor [O	PC Serv	rer_1]			_1	IX	🥖 OPC 🧐	5ignal Connecti	ons [/Configuration/	[6000] 🔳 🗖 🗙
]] Delete Resource	e Conne	ect OPC	Signals	HH-Netw	ork-Config	uration He	elp	🛛 New Ci	onnected Signal	Delete Connected Sign	el Help
Resourc	e	SR	S					Inputs	Outputs		
1 G160P0	201	600	00						Туре	Signal	
								1	BOOL	DI1	
	💋 Signa	al Edito	r Filter:*				- 🗆 🎽				
	🛛 New S	ignal 🛛	Delete Sigr	nal 🛛 He	lp .						
		Name	Туре	Retain	Constant	Description	Init Value				
	1	DI1	BOOL								
	2	D01	BOOL								



Input and Output are identified from the controller's perspective. Therefore, output means signals sent out from the GuardPLC 1600 and input means signals sent in to the GuardPLC 1600.

- **6.** Close the OPC Signal Connections window and the OPC-Server Resources Editor.
- 7. Completely expand the G16OPC01 tree. Right-click on [1] *DI 20* and select *Connect Signals*.
- 8. Drag *DI1* from the Signal Editor to *DI[01].Value* Signal field.

🚰 RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Managemen	it											
<u>Project Edit Signals Online Windows H</u> elp												
🗄 - 🎦 OPCtest	🛃 Signa	l Connections [/(Configura	tion/[- D ×	Sign	al Edito	r Filter:*				
🖻 - 📶 Configuration	∐ Help					II New S	ignal [Delete Siar	al He	lo l		
	Inputs	Outputs					Name	Tune	Betain	Constant	Description	Init Value
E- K [60000] G160PC01		Name	Туре	Signal	-	1 97777		BOOL	rictain	Constant	Description	THIC VOIGE
	1	DI.Error Code	WORD			2	D01	BOOL				
	2	DI[01].Error Code	BYTE					1				
	3	DI[01].Value	BOOL	DI1	_							
🖃 🧱 [0] GuardPLC 1600	4	DI[02].Error Code	BYTE									
Сом	5	DI[02].Value	BOOL									
	6	DI[03].Error Code	BYTE									
<mark>[]+-</mark> [1] DI 20	7	DI[03].Value	BOOL									
[!] <mark>]</mark> →[2] DO 8	8	DI[04].Error Code	BYTE									
	9	DI[04].Value	BOOL									
⊡- E HH-Network_1	10	DI[05].Error Code	BYTE									

- 9. Close the DI1 Signal Connections window.
- 10. Right-click on [2] DO 8 and select Connect Signals.
- **11.** Select the *Outputs* tab.

🚰 RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Managemer	ıt											
<u>Project Edit Signals Online Windows H</u> elp												
	🛃 Signa	d Connections	s [/Confi	gurati	-DX	<u>Ø</u> Signa New Si	al Edito ignal	r Filter:* Delete Sigr	nal He	lo		-OX
	Inputs	Outputs	,			1	Name	Туре	Retain	Constant	Description	Init Value
- Gistributed I/O		Name	Туре	Signal		1	DI1	BOOL				
	1	DO[01].Value	BOOL	D01		2	D01	BOOL				
COPC for Server 11	2	DO[02].Value	BOOL									
	3	D0[03].Value	BOOL									
🖃 🧰 [0] GuardPLC 1600	4	D0[04].Value	BOOL									
Сом	5	D0[05].Value	BOOL									
- CPU	6	D0[06].Value	BOOL									
- [1] DI 20	7	D0[07].Value	BOOL									
□ →[2] DO 8	8	D0[08].Value	BOOL									
HH-Network_1												

12. Drag *DO1* from the Signal Editor to the *DO[01].Value* signal field.

13. Close the DO Signal Connections window and the Signal Editor.

Setting the System Properties

Controller

- **1.** Right-click on *COM* under the GuardPLC 1600 tree and select *Properties.*
- 2. Set the IP Address to 192.168.0.99 and click OK.
- 3. Right-click on *Programming Terminal* and select *Properties*.
- 4. Set the System ID (SRS) to 5. Click OK.

📮 /Programming Terminal 📃 🗆 🗙				
Туре	Programming Terminal			
System ID	5			
Timeout [ms]	2000			
Resend Time [ms]	300			
<u></u> K	<u>Cancel</u> <u>Apply</u> <u>H</u> elp			

TIP

There are 3 devices in our system:

- **1.** the PC running the Signal Editor,
- 2. the OPC Server, and
- **3.** the GuardPLC controller.

All must have unique SRS numbers.

4. Right-click on OPC-Server and select Properties.

5. Set the System ID (SRS) to 1 and click OK.

RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Manageme	nt	
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help		
🗄 - 🎦 OPCtest	Magent Configurati	ion/OPC Server_1
	Туре	OPC Server
🖻 · 🔀 (60000) G160PC01	Name	OPC Server_1
🧰 Distributed I/O 🕀 🧰 Protocols	System ID [SRS	1 1
🎛 TypeInstance	<u>K</u>	<u>Cancel</u> <u>Apply</u> <u>H</u> elp

6. Expand the OPC-Server and double-click on *IP Address*. Set the IP Address to 192.168.0.216 and click *OK*.

📑 RSLogix Guard PLUS Hardware Manageme	nt								
Project Edit Signals Online Windows Help									
🗄 🎁 OPCtest	🔣 /Configuratio	n/(DPC Se	rvei	_1/IP	Addr	ess		-DX
⊡ ⊿ Configuration ⊡	Туре	ΙP	Addres:	s					
	IP Address	Γ	192		168		0		216
🗄 - 🔀 (60000) G160PC01	Subnet Mask	Γ	255		255		252		0
	Default Gateway	Γ	0		0		0		0
🎛 TypeInstance	IP Device	0							
⊡- 📻 (0) GuardPLC 1600	<u></u> K		<u>C</u> ance	el 🛛		Apply		ļ	Help

Token Group

- 1. Right-click on Token Group and select Properties.
- 2. Change the profile to "Medium".
- 3. Verify that the Token Group ID is 4. Click *Apply* and then *OK*.

HH-Network_1/Token	Group _ 🗆 🗙
Туре	Token Group
Name	Token Group
Profile	Medium
Token Group ID	4
Protocol Mode	Normal
Link Mode	TCS TOKCYC 📃
Response Time [ms]	16
Bus Cycle Time [ms]	152
Token Alive Timeout [ms]	48
Primary Timeout [ms]	400
Secondary Interval [ms]	200
Link Mode (Extern)	TCS TOKCYC 🗾
Response Time (external) [ms]	16
<u> </u>	<u>Apply</u> <u>H</u> elp

Generating Code for the OPC Server

- **1.** To generate the XML file for the OPC server, right-click on the OPC Server and select *Code Generator*. The process should take only 1 or 2 seconds. Make sure there are no warnings or errors.
- **2.** The resulting XML file is located in the project path of the RSLogix Guard PLUS project. Make note of this path so that you can point to it from the GuardPLC OPC Server.

▲ ▼

02/24/2004 10:22:50.174, Info: [OPC Server_1] Code generation started. 02/24/2004 10:22:50.264, Info: [OPC Server_1] OPC-Server configuration file: [C\Program Files\RSLogix Guard PLUS\PROJECT\OPCtestL2P\Configuration.L2C\OPC Server_1\opc.xml 02/24/2004 10:22:50.264, Info: [OPC Server_1] Code generation finished. Warnings: 0, Errors: 0.

- 3. Return to the Project Management window and save the project.
- **4.** Right-click on *Configuration* and select *Code Generation*. Check the Error State Viewer to make sure there are no errors or warnings. Correct any errors indicated.

Going Online with the Controller

- **1.** Return to the Hardware Management window and download the project to your controller.
- **2.** Put the controller into RUN.
- 3. Minimize RSLogix Guard PLUS.

Using the OPC Server

1. Start the GuardPLC OPC Server by selecting *Start* \rightarrow *Programs* \rightarrow *RSLogix Guard PLUS* \rightarrow *GuardPLC OPC Server.*

😵 GuardPLC OPC Server				_ 🗆 🗙
<u>File Mode Window H</u> elp				
] 😂 🖺 🛛 🅦 🥦 🕺 🤉				
Structure	Root			
Root	Name	System Id/SRS	Connection state	IP Addresses
	1			
	1			
	1			
	1			
	1			
	1			
	1			
	1			
				_
/				<u> </u>
02/24/2004 11:22:01.122, Info: New OPI	C status: No Config			
02/24/2004 11:22:01.162, Info: GuardPL 02/24/2004 11:22:01 162, Info: Version: 1	C UPC Server started. 3 39.0			
02/24/2004 11:22:01.162, mill: Version 02/24/2004 11:22:01.212, Info: New OPI	C status: Suspended			
			Server state: Suspended	

2. Select *File* \rightarrow *Open*.

- 3. Point to your opc.xml file and click Open.
- **4.** The controller and the OPC Server should appear in the Root window.

Root					
Name	System ID/SRS	Connection state	IP Addresses		
G160PC01	60000.1	Not connected	192.168.0.99, 127.0.0.1		
OPC Server_1	1	Not connected	192.168.0.216, 127.0.0.1		

5. Click on the *Connect to HIPRO* button.



- **6.** Answer *Yes* to the query.
- **7.** A connection opens between the G16OPC01 and the OPC Server.

Root						
Name	System ID/SRS	Connection state	IP Addresses			
G160PC01	60000.1	Connected on channel one	192.168.0.99, 127.0.0.1			
OPC Server_1	1	Connected on channel one	192.168.0.216, 127.0.0.1			

- 8. In the structure view, expand *Root*.
- **9.** Expand *G160PC01*.
- **10.** Use the Export and Import icons to view input (DI1) and output (DO1) data, respectively.

Specifications

GuardPLC 1200

Specifications	1754-L28BBB
Controller	
User Memory	500 KB application code memory 500 KB application data memory
Digital Inputs	
No. of Inputs	20 (not electrically isolated from each other, isolated from the backplane)
Nominal Input Voltage	24V dc
On-State Voltage	10V dc to 30V dc
On-State Current	2 mA @ 10V dc, 13 mA @ 30V dc
Off-State Voltage	5V dc (max.)
Off-State Current	1.5 mA max. (1 mA @ 5V)
Digital Outputs	
No. of Outputs	8 (not electrically isolated from each other, isolated from the backplane)
Output Voltage Range	18.4V to 26.8V
Output Current	0.5A per Channel (Channel 1 to 6) 2A per Channel (Channel 7, 8)
Surge Current per Channel	1A for 10 ms @ 1Hz (Channel 1 to 6) 4A for 10 ms @ 1Hz (Channel 7, 8)
Minimum Current Load	2.5 mA per Channel
On-State Voltage Drop	2.0V dc @ 500 mA (max.)
Off-State Leakage Current	1 mA per Channel (max.)
Temporary Overload	Output switches off until overload is eliminated
Counters	
No. of Counters	2
Inputs per Counter	3 (Input A, Input B, Z/Gate/Reset)
Counter Resolution	24 bit
Maximum Input Frequency	100kHz in Counter Modes (Input A)
Trigger	Negative Edge
Edge Steepness	1 V/μs
Duty Cycle	50% @ 100 kHz
Input Voltages	4.5V to 5.5V for 5V Input 13V to 26.4V for 24V Input
Input Current	Typ. 15 mA, \leq 3 mA

Specifications	1754-L28BBB		
Power Supply			
Supply Voltage (L+)	24V dc		
Supply voltage range	20.4V dc to 28.8V dc (10 ms buffer), ripple ≤15%		
Maximum Power Rating	8A (1A to run the controller, 7A for inputs and outputs)		
Environmental Condition	S		
Storage Temperature:	-40° C to +85° C without backup battery		
Operating Temperature:	0° C to +60° C		
Mechanical Dimensions			
Width x Height x Depth:	160 mm x 112 mm x 90 mm (6.3 in. x 4.41 in. x 3.54 in.)		
Weight	680 g (1.5 lb.)		
Agency Certifications	cupus C-UL Listed Industrial Control Equipment		
(when product is marked)	Marked for all applicable directives		
	Marked for all applicable acts		
	Functional Safety 1002D (AK 1 to 6, SIL 1 to 3, according to DIN V 19250 and IEC 61508 respectively) Category 1 to 4, according to EN954-1		

GuardPLC 1600

Specifications	1753-L28BBBM and 1753-L28BBBP
Controller	
User Memory	max. 250 KB user program memory max. 250 KB application data memory
Minimum Watchdog	10 ms
Minimum Safety Time	20 ms
Current Consumption	max. 8A (with max. load) 0.5A idle current (just running the controller)
Operating Voltage	24V dc, -15% to +20%, $w_{ss} \le 15\%$ (from a power supply with protective separation conforming to IEC 61131-2 requirements)
Interfaces: GuardPLC Ethernet	4 x RJ-45, 10/100BaseT (with 100 Mbit/s) with integrated switch
Protection	IP20
Digital Inputs	
No. of Inputs	20 (not electrically isolated)
On-state	Voltage: 15V to 30V dc Current Consumption: ≥ 2 mA @ 15V 7.5 mA @ 30V
Off-state	Voltage: max. 5V dc Current Consumption: max 1.5 mA (1 mA @ 5V)
Switching Point	typically 7.5V
Supply	5 x 20V / 100 mA @ 24V short-circuit proof

Specifications	1753-L28BBBM and 1753-L28BBBP		
Digital Outputs			
No. of Outputs	8 (not electrically isolated)		
Output Voltage Range	18.4V to 26.8V		
Output Current	Channels 1 to 3 and 5 to 7: 0.5 A @ 60°C (140°F) Channels 4 and 8: 1A @ 60°C (140°F); 2A @ 50°C (122°C)		
Surge Current per Channel	1A for 10ms @ 1 Hz (Channels 1 to 3 and 5 to 7) 4A for 10ms @ 1 Hz (Channels 4 and 8)		
Minimum Current Load	2 mA per Channel		
On-State Voltage Drop	max. 2.0V dc @ 2A		
Off-State Leakage Current	max. 1 mA @ 2V		
Environmental Conditio	ns		
Storage Temperature :	-40°C to +85°C (-40°F to +185°F)		
Operating Temperature:	0°C to +60°C (+32°F to 140°F)		
Mechanical Dimensi	ons		
Width	257 mm (10.1 in.) including housing screws		
Height	114 mm (4.49 in.) including latch		
Depth	66 mm (2.60 in.) including grounding bolt		
Weight	1.2 kg (2.64 lb.)		
Agency Certifications	د الله C-UL Listed Industrial Control Equipment		
(when product is	CE Marked for all applicable directives		
marked)	Marked for all applicable acts		
	Functional Safety 1002D (AK 1 to 6, SIL 1 to 3, according to DIN V 19250 and IEC 61508 respectively) Category 1 to 4, according to EN954-1		

GuardPLC 1800

Specifications	1753-L32BBBM-8A and 1753-L32BBBP-8A
Controller	
User Memory	max. 250 KB user program memory max. 250 KB application data memory
Minimum Watchdog Time	10 ms
Minimum Safety Time	20 ms
Current Consumption	max. 9A (with max. load) 0.75A idle current (just running the controller)
Operating Voltage	24V dc, -15% to +20%, $w_{ss} \le 15\%$ (from a power supply with
	requirements)
Protection	IP 20
Digital Inputs	
No. of Inputs	24 (not electrically isolated)
On State	Voltage: 15V to 30V dc Current Consumption: approximately 3.5 mA @ 24V dc Current Consumption: approximately 4.5 mA @ 30V dc
Off State	Voltage: max. 5V dc Current Consumption: max. 1.5 mA (1 mA @ 5V dc)
Input Resistance	<7kΩ
Overvoltage Protection	-10V, +35V
Max. line length	300 m (9.8 ft.)
Supply	20V / 100 mA, short-circuit proof
Digital Outputs	
No. of Outputs	8 (not electrically isolated)
Output Voltage Range	\geq L+ minus 2V
Output Current	Channels 1 to 3 and 5 to 7: 0.5 A @ 60°C (140°F) Channels 4 and 8: 1 A @ 60°C (140°F); 2 A @ 50°C (122°C)
Surge Current per Channel	1A for 10 ms @ 1 Hz (Channels 1 to 3 and 5 to 7) 4A for 10 ms @ 1 Hz (Channels 4 and 8)
Minimum Current Load	2 mA per Channel
Internal Voltage Drop	max. 2.0V dc @ 2A
Off-State Leakage Current	max. 1 mA @ 2V
Total Output Current	max. 7A

Specifications	1753-L32BBBM-8A and 1753-L32BBBP-8A
Counters	
Number of Counters	2 (not electrically isolated)
Inputs	3 per counter (A, B, Z)
Input Voltages	5V and 24V dc
	High signal (5V dc): 4V to 6V High signal (24V dc): 13V to 33V Low signal (5V dc): 0V to 0.5V Low signal (24V dc): -3V to 5V
Input Currents	1.4 mA @ 5V dc 6.5 mA @ 24V dc
Input Impedance	3.7 kΩ
Counter Resolution	24-bit
Max. Input Frequency	100 kHz
Triggered	on negative edge
Edge Steepness	1 V/µs
Pulse Duty Factor	1:1
Analog Inputs	
Number of Inputs	8 (unipolar, not electrically isolated)
External Shunt (for current measurement)	500 Ω for 0 to 20 mA
Input values related to L-	Nominal Value: 0 to +10V dc or 0 to +20 mA with 500 Ω shunt Service Value: -0.1 to +11.5V dc or -0.4 to +23 mA with 500 Ω shunt
Input Impedance	1 MΩ
Internal Resistance of the Signal Source	≤500 Ω
Overvoltage Protection	+15V, -4V
Resolution (A/D Converter)	12-bit
Accuracy	0.1% @ 25°C (77°F) 0.5% @ 60°C (140°F)
Transmitter Supplies	25.37 to 28.24V / \leq 46 mA, short-circuit proof
Safety Accuracy	± 2%
Environmental Condit	ions
Storage Temperature:	-40° C to +85° C (-40°F to +185°F)
Operating Temperature:	0° C to +60° C (+32°F to 140°F)

Specifications	1753-L32BBBM-8A and 1753-L32BBBP-8A
Mechanical Dimens	ions
Width	257 mm (10.1 in.) including housing screws
Height	114 mm (4.49 in.) including latch
Depth	66 mm (2.60 in.) including grounding screw 80 mm (3.15 in.) including shield plate
Weight	1.2 kg (2.64 lb.)
Agency Certifications	C-UL Listed Industrial Control Equipment
(when product is marked)	CE Marked for all applicable directives
	Marked for all applicable acts
	Functional Safety 10o2D (AK 1 to 6, SIL 1 to 3, according to DIN V 19250 and IEC 61508 respectively) Category 1 to 4, according to EN954-1

Distributed I/O

1753-IB16 Input Module

Specifications	1753-IB16
General	
Interfaces: GuardPLC Ethernet	2 x RJ-45, 10/100BaseT (with 100 Mbit/s) with integrated switch
Operating Voltage	24V dc, -15% to +20%, w_{ss} 15% from a power supply with protective separation, conforming to IEC 61131-2 requirements
Response Time	≥ 10 ms
Current Consumption	max. 0.8A (with max. load) (0.4A idle current)
Digital Inputs	
No. of Inputs	16 (not electrically isolated)
1 Signal	Voltage: 15V to 30V dc, Current Consumption: \ge 2 mA @ 15V
0 Signal	Voltage: max. 5V dc, Current Consumption: max 1.5 mA (1 mA @ 5V)
Switching Point	typically 7.5V
Switching Time	typically 250 μs
Sensor Supply	4 x 19.2V / 40 mA @ 24V short-circuit proof

Specifications	1753-IB16		
Pulse Test Sources	Pulse Test Sources		
Number of Pulse Test Sources	4 (not electrically isolated)		
Output Voltage Range	approximately 24V		
Output Current	60 mA		
Minimum Current Load	none		
Response to Overload	$4 \text{ x} \ge 19.2 \text{V}$, short circuit current 60 mA @ 24V		
Environmental Conditi	Environmental Conditions		
Storage Temperature	-40° C to +85° C (-40° F to +185° F)		
Operating Temperature	0° C to +60° C (+32° F to +140° F)		
Mechanical Dimensio	ns		
Width	152 mm (5.99 in.) including housing screws		
Height	114 mm (4.49 in.) including latch		
Depth	66 mm (2.60 in.) including grounding bolt		
Weight	0.7 kg (1.54 lb.)		
Agency Certifications	cUL Listed Industrial Control Equipment		
(when product is	CE Marked for all applicable directives		
marked)	Marked for all applicable acts		
	Functional Safety 10o2D (AK 1 to 6, SIL 1 to 3, according to DIN V 19250 and IEC 61508 respectively) Category 1 to 4, according to EN954-1		

1753-IB20X0B8 Combination I/O Module

Specifications	1753-IB20X0B8
General	
Interfaces: GuardPLC Ethernet	2 x RJ-45, 10/100BaseT (with 100 Mbit/s) with integrated switch
Operating Voltage	24V dc, -15% to +20%, w _{ss} 15% from a power supply with protective separation, conforming to IEC 61131-2 requirements
Response Time	≥ 10 ms
Battery Backup	none
Current Consumption	max. 8A (with max. load), idle current 0.4A @24V

Specifications	1753-IB20X0B8
Digital Inputs	
No. of Inputs	20 (not electrically isolated)
1 Signal	Voltage: 15V to 30V dc, Current Consumption: \geq 2 mA @ 15V
0 Signal	Voltage: max. 5V dc, Current Consumption: max 1.5 mA (1 mA @ 5V)
Switching Point	typically 7.5V
Sensor Supply	5 x 20V / 100 mA @ 24V short-circuit proof
Digital Outputs	
No. of Outputs	8 (not electrically isolated)
Output Voltage Range	≥ L+ minus 2V
Output Current	channels 1 to 3 and 5 to 7: 0.5 A @ 60°C (140°F) channels 4 and 8: 1 A @60°C (140°F), 2 A @ 50°C (122°F)
Surge Current per Channel	1A for 10 ms @ 1 Hz (Channels 1 to 3 and 5 to 7) 4A for 10 ms @ 1 Hz (Channels 4 and 8)
Minimum Current Load	2 mA per channel
Internal Voltage Drop	maximum 2V @ 2A
Leakage Current (with O signal)	maximum 1 mA @ 2V
Total Output Current	maximum 7A with exceeding shut down of all outputs with cyclic reconnecting
Response Overload	shut down of the concerned output with cyclic reconnecting
Environmental Condit	ions
Storage Temperature :	-40°C to +85°C (-40°F to +185°F) without backup battery
Operating Temperature:	0°C to +60°C (+32°F to +140°F)
Mechanical Dimension	ons
Width	207 mm (8.16 in.) including housing screws
Height	114 mm (4.49 in.) including latch
Depth	66 mm (2.60 in.) including grounding bolt
Weight	1.0 kg (2.2 lb.)
Agency Certifications	د الله C-UL Listed Industrial Control Equipment
(when product is	Marked for all applicable directives
marked)	Marked for all applicable acts
	Functional Safety 1002D (AK 1 to 6, SIL 1 to 3, according to DIN V 19250 and IEC 61508 respectively)
	Category 1 to 4, according to EN954-1

1753-OB16 Output Module

General		
	General	
Interfaces: GuardPLC Ethernet	2 x RJ-45, 10/100Base T (with 100 Mbit/s) with integrated switch	
Operating Voltage	24V dc, -15% to +20%, w _{ss} 15% from a power supply with protective separation, conforming to IEC 61131-2 requirements	
Response Time	≥ 10 ms	
Battery Backup	none	
Current Consumption	approximately 0.2A per group (idle current)	
Digital Outputs		
No. of Outputs	16 (not electrically isolated)	
Output Voltage Range	\geq L+ minus 2V	
Output Current	maximum 1A @ 60°C (140°F), maximum 2A @40°C (104°F)	
Surge Current Per Channel	4A for 10 ms @ 1 Hz	
Minimum Current Load	2 mA per channel	
Current per Group (admissible total current)	maximum 8A (maximum 16A)	
Lamp Load	maximum 10 W (for output 1A), maximum 25 W (for output 2A)	
Inductive Load	maximum 500 mH	
Internal Voltage Drop	maximum 2V @ 2A	
Leakage Current (with 0 signal)	maximum 1 mA @ 2V	
Response to Overload	shut down of concerned output with cyclic reconnecting	
Environmental Condit	ions	
Storage Temperature	-40°C to +85°C (-40°F to +185°F)	
Operating Temperature	0°C to +60°C (+32°F to +140°F)	
Mechanical Dimensions		
Width	207 mm (8.16 in.) including housing screws	
Height	114 mm (4.49 in.) including latch	
Depth	66 mm (2.60 in.) including grounding bolt	
Weight	0.85 kg (1.87 lb.)	

Specifications	1753-0B16
Agency Certifications	C-UL Listed Industrial Control Equipment
(when product is marked)	CE Marked for all applicable directives
	Marked for all applicable acts
	Functional Safety 10o2D (AK 1 to 6, SIL 1 to 3, according to DIN V 19250 and IEC 61508 respectively) Category 1 to 4, according to EN954-1

GuardPLC 2000 Controller

1755-L1 Specifications	
User Memory	500 KB application code memory 500 KB application data memory
Operating voltages	3.3V dc 5V dc
Current consumptions	3.3V / 1.5A 5V / 0.1A 24V dc / 1.0A
Front connectors	1 Ethernet connector for RSLogix Guard PLUS 2 ASCII connectors (RS-232)
Operating temperature	0°C to +60°C (+32°F to +140°F)
Storage temperature	-40°C to +85°C (-40°F to 185°F)
Weight	280 g (0.62 lb.)
Agency Certifications (when product is marked)	UL Listed Industrial Control Equipment Marked for all applicable directives Marked for all applicable acts Marked for all applicable acts Functional Safety 10o2D (AK 1 to 6, SIL 1 to 3, according to DIN V 19250 and IEC 61508 respectively) Category 1 to 4, according to EN954-1

I/O Modules

GuardPLC 2000 Distributed 1755-IB24X0B16 Digital I/O Module

1755-IB24XOB16 Specifications	
Digital Inputs	
Quantity of inputs	24
Nominal input voltage (1 signal)	24V dc (10 to 30V)
Off-state input voltage (O signal)	max. 5V dc
ON state current	2 mA at 10V, 13 mA at 30V (3 groups of 8, each group limited to 100 mA)
OFF state current	1.5 mA at 5V
Digital Outputs	
Quantity of outputs	16
Output voltage range	operating voltage minus 2V (depending on load)
Output current (30 °C)	2A per channel, overload protected, max. 8A per module
General Specifications	
Current consumption	0.3A / 3.3V dc 0.5A / 24V dc (Idle current to run module)
Operating voltage	24V dc, -15 to +20%, ripple \leq 15%
Operating temperature	0°C to +60°C (+32°F to +140°F)
Storage temperature	-40°C to +85 °C (-40°F to +185°F)
Weight	260 g (0.57 lb.)
Agency Certifications	UL Listed Industrial Control Equipment
(when product is marked)	CE Marked for all applicable directives
	Marked for all applicable acts
	Functional Safety 1002D (AK 1 to 6, SIL 1 to 3, according to DIN V 19250 and IEC 61508 respectively) Category 1 to 4, according to EN954-1

1755-IF8 Analog Input Module

1755-IF8 Specifications	
Number of inputs	8 single-ended or 4 differential
Input values	
rated values	0 to \pm 10V dc or 0 to +20 mA (with shunt) 0 to \pm 10.25V dc or 0 to +20.5 mA (with shunt)
user values	
External shunt (for current input)	500 Ω
Overvoltage protection	30V (±15V dc)
Resolution	12 bit
Input impedance	1 MΩ(DC)
Input signal / source impedance	≤500 Ω
Accuracy	0.1% at 25°C (77°F) 0.5% at 60°C (140°F)
Operating voltage	24V dc -15 to +20% ripple ≤15%
Maximum common mode voltage to I-	±13V dc
Current consumption	150 mA / 3.3V dc 400 mA / 24V dc
Operating temperature	0°C to +60°C (+32°F to +140°F)
Storage temperature	-40°C to +85°C (-40° to +185°F)
Weight	240 g (0.53 lb.)
Agency Certifications (when product is marked)	UL Listed Industrial Control Equipment Marked for all applicable directives Marked for all applicable acts Functional Safety 1002D (AK 1 to 6, SIL 1 to 3, according to DIN V 19250 and IEC 61508 respectively) Category 1 to 4, according to EN954-1

1755-OF8 Analog Output Module

1755-OF8 Specifications		
Quantity of outputs	8	
Max. output values	0 to ±10V or 0 to +20 mA	
Overvoltage protection	24V	
Source value	UINT	
Load impedance	load \leq 600 Ω (current) limit resistance > 5 k Ω (voltage)	
Accuracy	0.3% at +25°C (+77°F) 0.5% at +60°C (+140°F)	
Safety relevant accuracy	1%	
Operating voltage	24V dc -15 to +20% ripple ≤ 15%	
Current consumption	150 mA / 3.3V dc 400 mA / 24V dc	
Operating temperature	0°C to +60°C (+32°F to +140°F)	
Storage temperature	-40°C to +85°C (-40°F to +185°F)	
Weight	280 g (0.53 lb.)	
Agency Certifications	UL Listed Industrial Control Equipment	
(when product is marked)	C E Marked for all applicable directives	
	Marked for all applicable acts	
	Functional Safety 10o2D (AK 1 to 6, SIL 1 to 3, according to DIN V 19250 and IEC 61508 respectively) Category 1 to 4, according to EN954-1	

1755-HSC High Speed Counter Module

1755-HSC Specifications			
Number of counters	2		
Input voltage	5V or 24V		
Input current	≤3 mA		
Input signal frequency	0 to 1 MHz		
Trigger	with falling edge		
Edge Steepness	1V/µs		
Input cables	\leq 500 m at 100 kHz, shielded, twisted		
Input resistance	3.7 k Ω		
Resolution	24 bit (value range 0 to 16,777,215)		
Accuracy of time basis	0.2%		
Quantity of outputs	4 digital		
Output load	≤0.5A, voltage drop: ≤3V		
Output load in summary	<2A		
	≥ 18V		
Operating Voltage	24V dc, -15 to +20%, ripple ≤15%		
Current consumption	0.1A / 24V dc without load 0.8A (3.3V dc), 0.1A (5V dc)		
Operating temperature	0°C to +60°C (+32°F to +140°F)		
Storage temperature	-40°C to +85°C (-40°F to +185°F)		
Weight	260 g (0.57 lb.)		
Agency Certifications (when product is marked)	UL Listed Industrial Control Equipment Marked for all applicable directives Marked for all applicable acts Functional Safety 1002D (AK 1 to 6, SIL 1 to 3, according to DIN V 19250 and IEC 61508 respectively) Category 1 to 4, according to EN954-1		

GuardPLC 2000 Power Supply

1755-PB720 Specifications

Supply voltage	24V dc		
Supply voltage range	20.4V dc to 28.8V dc (10 msec buffer), ripple ≤15%		
External fusing	30A ⁽¹⁾ / IEC (This module has no overcurrent protection.)		
Outputs	3.3V dc/10A, 5V dc/2A		
Operating temperature	0°C to +60°C (+32°F to +140°F)		
Storage temperature	-40°C to +60°C (-40°F to +140°F) with battery -40°C to +85°C (-40°F to +185°F) without battery		
Weight	820 g (1.80 lb.)		
Agency Certifications (when product is marked)	UL Listed Industrial Control Equipment Marked for all applicable directives Marked for all applicable acts Marked for all applicable acts Functional Safety 1002D (AK 1 to 6, SIL 1 to 3, according to DIN V 19250 and IEC 61508 respectively) Category 1 to 4, according to EN954-1		

(1) The power supply can supply up to 30A for I/O modules. Use an appropriate fuse for your system's power requirements.

System Variables

Using This Appendix

For information about:	See page
programming controller data	B-1
I/O variables	В-3

Programming Controller Data

The controller supports system variables that you can configure.

The system variables are defined as:

- **SAFE**: the controller can use this information in safety-related functions
- **NON-SAFE**: additional information that safety functions must not rely on

The system variables are:

System Variable:	Unit/Value:	Read/Write:	Description: ⁽¹⁾
Contact Assembly 1 Contact Assembly 2 Contact Assembly 3 Contact Assembly 4	true false	Write	On true, the contact closes; on false the contact does not close. Only available for a GuardPLC 2000 controller. [BOOL] NON-SAFE
Cooling Fan State	0, 1, 2	Read	0 = normal 1 = fans OK 2 = fan error Only available for a GuardPLC 2000 controller. [BYTE] NON-SAFE
Cycle Time	milliseconds	Read	Duration of the last cycle [UDINT] SAFE
Date Time Seconds Date Time Milliseconds	seconds milliseconds	Read	Time passed since 1970. An automatic switchover from summer to winter time is not supported. [UDINT] NON-SAFE
Emergency Stop 1 Emergency Stop 2 Emergency Stop 3 Emergency Stop 4	true false	Write	True triggers Emergency Off [BOOL] SAFE Use these signals to force all inputs and outputs to the zero/OFF state from within the user program.

Unit/Value:	Read/Write:	Description: ⁽¹⁾		
milliseconds	Read	Remaining running time during forcing; 0 if Force is inactive. [DINT] NON-SAFE		
0-255	Read	GuardPLC 1200 and GuardPLC 2000 0 = normal 1 = error of input power supply 24 VDC 2 = error of battery 4 = module error of power supply 5 V 8 = module error of power supply 3.3 V 16 = 5 V undervoltage 32 = 5 V overvoltage 64 = 3.3 V undervoltage 128 = 3.3 V overvoltage 255 = status does not exist [BYTE] NON-SAFE	GuardPLC 1600 and GuardPLC 1800 0 = normal 1 = 24 VDC undervoltage 4 = 5 V undervoltage 8 = 3.3 V undervoltage 16 = 3.3 V overvoltage [BYTE] NON-SAFE	
milliseconds	Read	Ring counter with 64 bits which is increm SAFE	nented in millisecond steps. [UDINT]	
0, 1, 2, 3, 255	Read	0 = normal 1 = high 2 = faulty 3 = very high 255 = status does not exist [BYTE] NON-SAFE (but for additional switch-of	f)	
	Unit/Value: milliseconds 0-255 0-255 milliseconds 0, 1, 2, 3, 255	Unit/Value:Read/Write:millisecondsRead0-255ReadnillisecondsReadmillisecondsReadno. 1, 2, 3, 255Read	Unit/Value:Read/Write:Description:millisecondsReadRemaining running time during forcing; 0 [DINT] NON-SAFE0-255ReadGuardPLC 1200 and GuardPLC 2000 0 = normal 1 = error of input power supply 24 VDC 2 = error of battery 4 = module error of power supply 5 V 8 = module error of power supply 3.3 V 16 = 5 V undervoltage 32 = 5 V overvoltage 64 = 3.3 V undervoltage 128 = 3.3 V overvoltage 255 = status does not exist [BYTE] NON-SAFEmillisecondsReadRing counter with 64 bits which is increm SAFE0, 1, 2, 3, 255Read0 = normal 1 = high 2 = faulty 3 = very high 255 = status does not exist [BYTE] NON-SAFE	

(1) Binary values are ORed.

I/O Variables

Depending upon the type of controller, the various GuardPLC controllers support variables for digital and analog I/O parameters that you can configure or monitor.

Digital I/O Module Variables (AB-DIO) for GuardPLC 1200 and 2000

The GuardPLC 1200 and 2000 controllers support these digital I/O parameters:

I/O Data:	Read/Write:	Description:		
Board.SRS	Read	System.Rack.Slot		
Board.Type	Read	Module type		
		0x00E1	digital I/O module for GuardPLC 1200 controller	
		0xFE01	digital I/O module for GuardPLC 2000 controller	
		OxFFFF	missing module in GuardPLC 2000 chassis	
Board.State ⁽¹⁾	Read	Error mask for the module		
		0x000	I/O processing may be running with errors	
		0x001	No I/O processing (CPU not in RUN)	
		0x002	No I/O processing during start-up tests	
		0x004	Manufacturing interface running	
		0x010	No I/O processing due to faulty parameterization	
		0x020	No I/O processing due to exceeded fault rate	
		0x040	No I/O processing because configured module is not plugged in	
DO.State ⁽¹⁾	Read	Error mask for all	digital outputs	
		0x0000	No errors detected	
		0x0001	Error of the DO section of the module	
		0x0002	Within the multiple error occurrence time: safety switch 1 faulty	
		0x0004	Within the multiple error occurrence time: safety switch 2 faulty	
		0x0008	Within the multiple error occurrence time: test sample tests faulty	
		0x0010	Within the multiple error occurrence time: readback channels faulty	
		0x0020	Within the multiple error occurrence time: active switch-off faulty	
		0x0100	Within the safety time: CS signals faulty	
		0x0200	All outputs switched off; total current too high	
		0x0400	Within the safety time: temperature limit 1 exceeded	
		0x0800	Within the safety: temperature limit 2 exceeded	
		0x01000	Within the safety time: auxiliary voltage monitoring: undervoltage	
		0x02000	Within the multiple error occurrence time: status of the safety switches	

I/O Data:	Read/Write:	Description	:	
D0[0x].State ⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾	Read	Error mask for digital output channels		
		0x00	No error detected; outputs driven as expected	
		0x01	Error in digital output module; outputs not driven	
		0x02	Output switched off due to overcurrent; outputs not driven	
		0x04	Error during readback of the digital output; outputs not driven	
DO[0x].Value ⁽¹⁾	Write	Output value	of digital output channels	
		0	Output de-energized	
		1	Output activated	
DI.State	Write	Error mask for all digital inputs		
		0x0000	No error detected	
		0x0001	Error of the DI section of the module	
		0x0002	Within the safety time: test sample test faulty	
DI[xy].State ⁽³⁾	Read	Error mask of	digital input channels	
		0x00	No error detected	
		0x01	Error in the digital input module; input value set to 0	
DI[xy].Value ⁽²⁾	Read	Input values	of digital input channels	
		0	Input not activated	
		1	Input activated	

(1) Values are ORed.

(2) 0x = output channel 01 to 16 for GuardPLC 2000 controller and 01 to 08 for GuardPLC 1200, 1600, and 1800 controllers.

(3) xy = input channel 01 to 24 for GuardPLC 2000 and GuardPLC 1800 controllers and 01 to 20 for GuardPLC 1200 and 1600 controllers.

Analog Input Module Variables (AB-AI) for GuardPLC 2000

The GuardPLC 2000 controller supports these analog input parameters:

I/O Data:	Read/Write:	Description:		
Al.Mode	Write	Mode for all	channels of the analog input module	
		0	unipolar (single-ended)	
		1	differential	
Al.State	Read	Error mask for all analog inputs		
		0x0000	No errors detected	
		0x0001	Error of the module	
		8000x0	Within the safety time: data bus walking bit error	
		0x0010	Within the safety time: coefficient table check error	
		0x0020	Within the safety time: supply voltages error	
		0x0040	Error on A/D conversion (DRDY_HIGH)	
		0x0080	Within the multiple error occurrence time: error in multiplexer crosslink	
		0x0100	Within the multiple error occurrence time: data bus walking bit error	
		0x0200	Within the multiple error occurrence time: multiplexer address error	
		0x0400	Within the multiple error occurrence time: supply voltages error	
		0x0800	Within the multiple error occurrence time: error in characteristic curve (unipolar mode)	
		0x1000	Within the multiple error occurrence time: limit values/zero point error (unipolar mode)	
		0x2000	Within the multiple error occurrence time: error in characteristic curve (differential mode)	
		0x4000	Within the multiple error occurrence time: limit values/zero point error (differential mode)	
		0x8000	Error in A/D conversion (DRDY_LOW)	
Al[0x].State ⁽¹⁾	Read	Error mask fo	Error mask for analog input channels	
		0x00	No error detected	
		0x01	Error in analog input channel	
		0x02	Invalid measurement values	
		0x04	A/D converters faulty	
		80x0	Measurement values are not within the safety accuracy	
		0x10	Measurement value overflow	
		0x20	Channel not in use	
		0x40	Addressing error of the two A/D converters	

I/O Data:	Read/Write:	Description:		
AI[0x].Used	Write	Configuration of analog input channel		
		0	not used	
		1	used	
AI[0x].Value ⁽¹⁾	Read	Analog value of input channel (WORD) -10V to +10V = -1000 to +1000		
Board.SRS	Read	System.Rack.	Slot	
Board.Type	Read	Module type		
		0xFD02	analog input module for GuardPLC 2000 controller	
		OxFFFF	missing module in GuardPLC 2000 chassis	
Board.State	Read	Error mask for the module		
		0x000	I/O processing may be running with errors	
		0x001	No I/O processing (CPU not in RUN)	
		0x002	No I/O processing during start-up tests	
		0x004	Manufacturing interface running	
		0x010	No I/O processing due to faulty parameterization	
		0x020	No I/O processing due to exceeded fault rate	
		0x040	No I/O processing because configured module is not plugged in	

(1) 0x = input channel 01 to 08.

Analog Output Module Variables (AB-AO) for GuardPLC 2000

The GuardPLC 2000 controller supports these analog output parameters:

I/O Data:	Read/Write:	Description:	
A0.State	Read	Error mask fo	r all analog outputs
		0x0000	No errors detected
		0x0001	Error of the module
		0x0002	Within the safety time: co-efficient table check error
		0x0004	No communication with the module due to controller error
A0[0x].Mode	Write	Mode of analog output channel	
		0	voltage
		1	current
I/O Data:	Read/Write:	Description:	
-----------------------------	-------------	---	--
A0[0x].State ⁽¹⁾	Read	Error mask for a	nalog output channels
		0x0000 0001	CPU detected error on AB-AO module
		0x0000 0002	CPU detected faulty monotony counter
		0x0000 0004	CPU detected error in safe addressing
		0x0000 0008	CPU detected faulty CRC
		0x0000 0010	CPU detected error in watchdog time of the AB-AO onboard microprocessor
		0x0000 0020	CPU cannot communicate with the AB-AO onboard microprocessor
		0x0000 0040	CPU detected that the present operating mode (current/voltage) is different from the initialized operating mode
		0x0001 0000	AB-AO onboard microprocessor detected read back error
		0x0004 0000	AB-AO onboard microprocessor detected wrong supply voltage
		0x0008 0000	Within the multiple error occurrence time: AB-AO onboard microprocessor detected faulty safety switch
		0x0080 0000	AB-AO onboard microprocessor detected both safety switches as faulty
		0x0200 0000	AB-AO onboard microprocessor INITIALIZE
		0x1000 0000	AB-AO onboard microprocessor detected error because of module over temperature
		0x2000 0000	AB-AO onboard microprocessor detected module over temperature
		0x8000 0000	CPU detected error on redundant AB-AO onboard microprocessor channel
AO[0x].Used	Write	Configuration o	f analog output channel
		0	not used
		1	used
A0[0x].Value ⁽¹⁾	Write	Output value of Voltage mode: Current mode:	analog output channels -10V to +10V = -1000 to +1000 0mA to +20mA = 0 to +1000 for values between -1000 to 0, the output current is 0mA
Board.SRS	Read	System.Rack.SI	ot
Board.Type	Read	Module type	
		0xFB04	analog output module for GuardPLC 2000 controller
		OxFFFF	missing module in GuardPLC 2000 chassis

I/O Data:	Read/Write:	Description	
Board.State	Read	Error mask fo	or the module
		0x000	I/O processing may be running with errors
		0x001	No I/O processing (CPU not in RUN)
		0x002	No I/O processing during start-up tests
		0x004	Manufacturing interface running
		0x010	No I/O processing due to faulty parameterization
		0x020	No I/O processing due to exceeded fault rate
		0x040	No I/O processing because configured module is not plugged in

(1) 0x = output channels 01 to 08.

High-Speed Counter Variables For GuardPLC 1200 and 2000

The GuardPLC 1200 and GuardPLC 2000 controllers support the following variables for counter I/O parameters:

I/O Data:	Read/Write:	Description:	
Board.SRS	Read	System.Rack.Slo	t
Board.Type	Read	Module type	
		0x0003	counter module for GuardPLC 1200 controller
		0xFC03	counter module for GuardPLC 2000 controller
		OxFFFF	missing module in GuardPLC 2000 chassis
Board.State	Read	Error mask for th	e module
		0x000	I/O processing may be running with errors
		0x001	No I/O processing (CPU not in RUN)
		0x002	No I/O processing during start-up tests
		0x004	Manufacturing interface running
		0x010	No I/O processing due to faulty parameterization
		0x020	No I/O processing due to exceeded fault rate
		0x040	No I/O processing because configured module is not plugged in

I/O Data:	Read/Write:	Description:		
Cnt.State	Read	Error mask of both c	ounters	
		0x0000	No errors detected	
		0x0001	Error of the counter section of the module	
		0x0002	Error while comparing the time base	
		0x0004	Addressing error while reading the time base	
		0x0008	Parameterization of the time base corrupted	
		0x0010	Addressing error while reading the counts	
		0x0020	Parameterization of counter corrupted	
		0x0040	Addressing error while reading the Gray codes	
		0x0080	Within the multiple error occurrence time: test sample test faulty	
_		0x0100	Error of the module	
Cnt[0x].Value ⁽¹⁾	Read	Counts of counter 1 24 bits for pulse cou 4 bits for Gray code	or 2 (cyclic 24-bit) nter for GuardPLC 2000; 3 bits for Gray code for GuardPLC 1200	
Cnt[0x].5/24V Mode ⁽¹⁾	Read/Write	5V or 24V mode of counter 1 or 2 The write values must have initial values or constants.		
		0	5V	
		1	24V	
Cnt[0x].Auto Advance	Read/Write	Automatic recognition	on of direction of counting for counter 1 or 2	
Sense ⁽¹⁾		0	Manual setting of direction of counting	
		1	Automatic recognition of direction of counting	
Cnt[0x].Direction ⁽¹⁾	Read/Write	Direction of counting (only when Automat	g for counter 1 or 2 ic Counter Advance Sense = false)	
		0	Up	
		1	Down	
Cnt[0x].Dummy1	Read/Write	reserved memory sp	ace for future use	
Cnt[0x].Dummy2	Read/Write	reserved memory sp	ace for future use	
Cnt[0x].GrayCode ⁽¹⁾	Read/Write	Gray code mode of c	counter 1 or 2	
		0	Pulse	
		1	Gray	
Cnt[0x].Halt ⁽¹⁾	Read/Write	currently not used		
Cnt[0x].Reset ⁽¹⁾	Read/Write	Reset for counter 1 of	or 2	
		0	Resetting of counter	
		1	No resetting of counter	

I/O Data:	Read/Write:	Description:			
Cnt[0x].State ⁽¹⁾	Read	Error mask of cou	nter 1 or 2		
		0x01	Error in counter unit		
		0x02	Error while comparing the counts		
		0x04	Error while comparing the time stamps		
		0x08	Error resetting counter		
Cnt[0x].Time Overflow ⁽¹⁾	Read	Overflow indicate	r of time stamp of counter 1 or 2		
		true	24 bits overflow since last cycle		
		false	No 24 bits overflow since last cycle		
Cnt[0x].Time Stamp ⁽¹⁾	Read	Time stamp for Cr 24 bits, time reso	nt[0x].Value (cyclic 24-bit) Iution 1µs		
Cnt[0x].Value Overflow ⁽¹⁾	Read	Overflow indicate	r of counter 1 or 2		
		true	24 bits overflow since last cycle (only when Automatic Counter Advance Sense = false)		
		false	No 24 bits overflow since last cycle		
D0.State	Read	Error mask for all	Error mask for all counter outputs		
		0x0001	Error of the DO section of the module		
		0x0002	Within the multiple error occurrence time: safety switch 1 faulty		
		0x0004	Within the multiple error occurrence time: safety switch 2 faulty		
		0x0008	Within the multiple error occurrence time: test sample tests faulty		
		0x0010	Within the multiple error occurrence time: readback channels faulty		
		0x0020	Within the multiple error occurrence time: active switch-off faulty		
		0x0100	Within the safety time: CS signals faulty		
		0x0200	All outputs switched off; total current too high		
		0x0400	Within the safety time: temperature limit 1 exceeded		
		0x0800	Within the safety time: temperature limit 2 exceeded		
		0x01000	Within the safety time: auxiliary voltage monitoring: undervoltage		
		0x02000	Within the multiple error occurrence time: status of the safety switches		
DO[0y].State ⁽²⁾	Read	Error mask for cou	unter outputs 1 to 4		
		0x01	Error in output channel		
		0x02	Output channel switched off due to overcurrent		
		0x04	Error during readback of the output channel		
_		0x08	Faulty initialization after counter reset		
DO[0x].Value ⁽²⁾	Write	Output value of co presets. They are	ounter outputs 1 to 4 (These 4 outputs cannot be driven by counter driven by user software only.)		
		0	Output de-energized		
		1	Output activated		

(1) Ox = counter 01 or 02.

(2) 0y = outputs 01, 02, 03, or 04

Digital Input Module Variables for GuardPLC 1600 and DIO

The GuardPLC 1600 controllers and distributed I/O support the following digital input parameters.

I/O Data:	Read/Write	Description:	
Module.SRS	Read	Slot number (Syst	rem.Rack.Slot)
Module.Type	Read	Module type	
		0x00A5	Digital input module (DI20) for GuardPLC 1600
		0x00A5	Digital input module (DI20) for 1753-IB20XOB8
		0x002D	Digital input module (DI16) for 1753-IB16
Module.Error.Code	Read	Error mask for the	e module
		0x0000	I/O processing may be running with errors
		0x0001	No I/O processing (CPU not in RUN)
		0x0002	No I/O processing during start-up tests
		0x0004	Manufacturing interface running
		0x0010	No I/O processing due to incorrect configuration
		0x0020	No I/O processing due to exceeded fault rate
		0x0040	No I/O processing because configured module is not plugged in
DI.Error Code	Read	Error mask for all digital inputs	
		0x0001	Error in digital input range
		0x0002	FTZ test of test pattern failed
DI[xy].Error Code ⁽¹⁾	Read	Error mask of all o	ligital input channels
		0x01	Error in digital input module
		0x10	Short-circuit of the channel
		0x80	Line interrupt between pulse output (D0) and pulse input (DI)
DI[xy].Value ⁽¹⁾	Write	Input value of dig	ital input channels
		0	Input not set
		1	Input set

I/O Data:	Read/Write	Description:			
DI.Number of Pulse	Write	Number of puls	Number of pulse outputs (feed outputs)		
Channel		0	No output channel provided for line monitoring		
		1	Output channel 1 provided for line monitoring		
		2	Output channels 1 and 2 provided for line monitoring		
		3	Output channels 1, 2, and 3 provided for line monitoring		
		4	Output channels 1to 4 provided for line monitoring		
		5	Output channels 1to 5 provided for line monitoring		
		6	Output channels 1to 6 provided for line monitoring		
		7	Output channels 1to 7 provided for line monitoring		
		8	Output channels 1to 8 provided for line monitoring		
DI.Pulse Slot	Write	Pulse module slot (LC)			
DI.Pulse Channel	Write	Source channel of pulse feed			
		0	Input channel		
		1	Pulse from first DO channel		
		2	Pulse from second DO channel		
		3	Pulse from third DO channel		
		4	Pulse from fourth DO channel		
		5	Pulse from fifth DO channel		
		6	Pulse from sixth DO channel		
		7	Pulse from seventh DO channel		
		8	Pulse from eighth DO channel		
DI.LC Delay	Write	Waiting time for pulse output (short-circuit-proof)			

(1) xy = input channel 01 to 24 for GuardPLC 1800 controllers and 01 to 20 for GuardPLC 1600 controllers.

Digital Output Module Variables for GuardPLC 1600, 1800 and DIO

The GuardPLC 1600 and 1800 controllers and distributed I/O support the following digital output parameters.

I/O Data:	Read/Write	Description:	
Module.SRS	Read	Slot number (Sys	tem.Rack.Slot)
Module.Type	Read	Module type	
		0x00B4	digital output module (DO8) for GuardPLC 1600, 1800, and 1753-IB20XOB8
		0x005A	digital output module (D016) for 1753-0B16
Module.Error.Code	Read	Error mask for th	e module
		0x0000	I/O processing may be running with errors
		0x0001	No I/O processing (CPU not in RUN)
		0x0002	No I/O processing during start-up tests
		0x0004	Manufacturing interface running
		0x0010	No I/O processing due to incorrect configuration
		0x0020	No I/O processing due to exceeded fault rate
		0x0040	No I/O processing because configured module is not plugged in
DO.Error Code	Read	Error mask for al	l digital outputs
		0x0001	Error in digital output range
		0x0002	MEZ test of test pattern failed
		0x0004	MEZ test, auxiliary supply failed
		0x0010	FTZ test of test pattern failed
		0x0020	FTZ test of test pattern of the output switch failed
		0x0040	FTZ test of the test pattern of the output switch (disconnection test of outputs) failed
DO[0x].Error Code ⁽¹⁾	Read	Error mask of all	digital output channels
		0x01	Error in digital output module
		0x02	Output switched off due to overload
		0x04	Error when reading back the activation of the digital outputs
		0x08	Error when reading back the status of the digital outputs

(1) 0x = output channels 01 to 08.

Counter Module Variables for GuardPLC 1800 Controllers

The GuardPLC 1800 controllers support the following counter parameters.

I/O Data:	Read/Write	Description:		
Module.SRS	Read	Slot number (System.Rack.Slot)		
Module.Type	Read	Module type		
		0x0003	high speed counter module for GuardPLC 1800	
Module.Error.Code	Read	Error mask for the module		
		0x0000	I/O processing may be running with errors	
		0x0001	No I/O processing (CPU not in RUN)	
		0x0002	No I/O processing during start-up tests	
		0x0004	Manufacturing interface running	
		0x0010	No I/O processing due to incorrect configuration	
		0x0020	No I/O processing due to exceeded fault rate	
		0x0040	No I/O processing because configured module is not plugged in	
Cnt.Error Code	Read	Error mask of counter module		
		0x0001	Error in module	
		0x0002	Error comparing the time base	
		0x0004	Address error reading the time base	
		0x0008	Parameters for the time base are faulty	
		0x0010	Address error reading the counter content	
		0x0020	Configuration of counter damaged	
		0x0040	Address error reading the Gray Code	
		0x0080	FTZ test of the test pattern failed	
		0x0100	FTZ test, error checking the coefficients	
Cnt[0x].Error Code ⁽¹⁾	Read	Error mask of counter channels 1 and 2		
		0x01	Error in counter module	
		0x02	Error comparing contents of counters	
		0x04	Error comparing the timestamps of the counters	
		0x08	Error setting the parameters (reset)	
Cnt[0x].Value ⁽¹⁾	Read	Content of count	ers: 24-bit for pulse counter, 3-bit for Gray Code	
Cnt[0x].Timestamp ⁽¹⁾	Read	Time stamp for <i>C</i>	<i>Ent[Ox].Value</i> 24-bit, time resolution 1µs	
Cnt[0x].Value Overflow ⁽¹⁾	Read	Counter overflow	/ indication	
		True	24-bit overflow since last measurement (only if <i>Cnt[0x].Auto Advance Sense</i> = False)	
		False	No overflow since last cycle	

I/O Data:	Read/Write	Description:		
Cnt[0x].Time Overflow ⁽¹⁾	Read	Overflow indication for the time stamp of the counters		
		True	24-bit overflow since last measurement	
		False	No 24-bit overflow since last measurement	
Cnt[0x].Direction ⁽¹⁾	Read/Write	Counting direction of the counter (only if <i>Cnt[0x].Auto Advance Sense</i> = False)		
		True	upward (increment)	
		False	downward (decrement)	
Cnt[0x].Auto Advance	Read/Write	Automatic counter direction recognition		
Sense ⁽¹⁾		True	Automatic recognition on	
		False	Manual setting of counter direction	
Cnt[0x].Reset ⁽¹⁾	Read/Write	Reset counter		
		True	No reset	
		False	Reset	
Cnt[0x].5/24V Mode ⁽¹⁾	Read/Write	Counter input 5V o	or 24V	
		True	24V	
		False	5V	
Cnt[0x].Gray Code ⁽¹⁾	Read/Write	Decoder or pulse of	operation	
		True	Gray Code decoder	
		False	Pulse operation	

(1) Ox = counter 01 or 02.

Digital (Analog) Input Variables for the GuardPLC 1800 Controller

The digital inputs on the GuardPLC 1800 are actually analog inputs with the following configurable parameters:

I/O Data:	Read/Write	Description:			
Module.SRS	Read	Slot number (System.Rack.Slot)			
Module.Type	Read	Module type			
		0x00D2	Digital input module (MI24/8 FS:1000) for GuardPLC 1800		
		0x0096	Digital input module (MI24/8 FS:2000) for GuardPLC 1800		
Module.Error.Code	Read	Error mask for the module			
		0x0000	I/O processing may be running with errors		
		0x0001	No I/O processing (CPU not in RUN)		
		0x0002	No I/O processing during start-up tests		
		0x0004	Manufacturing interface running		
		0x0010	No I/O processing due to incorrect configuration		
		0x0020	No I/O processing due to exceeded fault rate		
		0x0040	No I/O processing because configured module is not plugged in		
AI.Error Code	Read	Error mask for	all digital (analog) inputs		
		0x0001	Error in input range		
		0x0008	FTZ test: walking bit of data bus faulty		
		0x0010	FTZ test: error checking coefficients		
		0x0020	FTZ test: operating voltages faulty		
		0x0040	A/D conversion faulty (DRDY_LOW)		
		0x0080	MEZ test: cross links of MUX faulty		
		0x0100	MEZ test: walking bit of data bus faulty		
		0x0200	MEZ test: multiplexer addresses faulty		
		0x0400	MEZ test: operating voltages faulty		
		0x0800	MEZ test: measuring system (characteristic) faulty (unipolar)		
		0x1000	MEZ test: measuring system (final values, zero point) faulty (unipolar)		
		0x8000	A/D conversion faulty (DRDY_HIGH)		

I/O Data:	Read/Write	Description:		
AI[xx].Error Code DI[xx].Error Code	Read Read	Error mask for analog input channels (1 to 8) Error mask for digital input channels (9 to 32)		
		0x01	Error in input module	
		0x02	Measured values invalid	
		0x04	A/D converter faulty	
		0x08	Measured value not within the safety accuracy	
		0x10	Measured value overflow	
		0x20	Channel not in operation	
		0x40	Address error of both A/D converters	
		0x80	Configuration of hysteresis faulty	
Al[xx].Value Analog	Read	Analog value of AI channels (1 to 8) [WORD] from 0 to +1000 The validity is dependent on the error mask.		
DI[xx].Value Analog	Read	Analog value of the DI channels (9 to 32) [WORD] from 0 to +3000 The validity is dependent on the error mask.		
DI[xx].Value Bool	Read	Digital value of DI channels (9 to 32) [BOOL] according to hysteresis The validity is dependent on the error mask.		
AI[xx].Hysteresis LOW	Write	Upper limit of the 0-signal voltage range <i>DI[xx]</i> . Value Bool		
AI[xx].Hysteresis HIGH	Write	Lower limit of the 1-signal voltage range <i>DI[xx]. Value Bool</i>		
AI[xx].Used DI[xx].Used	Write Write	Configuration for indicating utilization of channels 1 to 8 Configuration for indicating utilization of channels 9 to 32		

Replacing the Backup Battery

The following procedures apply only to GuardPLC 1200 controllers and GuardPLC 2000 power supplies. Other GuardPLC controllers and I/O modules are not equipped with backup batteries.

Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Only qualified personnel with knowledge of ESD protective measures may replace the back-up battery.

ATTENTION



Electrostatic discharge can damage integrated circuits or semiconductors. Follow these guidelines when you handle the module:

- Touch a grounded object to discharge static potential.
- Wear an approved wrist-strap grounding device.
- If available, use a static-safe workstation.
- When not in use, keep the GuardPLC controller in its static-shield box.

GuardPLC 1200

Replace the backup battery on your GuardPLC 1200 controller every two years. The battery case is located on the left-hand side of the cabinet (see drawing below). The battery must be replaced together with the case. Replacements are available from Rockwell Automation under part number 1754-BAT.

Follow the steps on page C-2 to replace the battery.





Make sure that the GuardPLC 1200 is powered on. Replacing the backup battery while the controller is de-energized causes a reset. All data including the clock settings will be lost.

- **1.** Pull the left side of the battery case toward you to remove the battery case.
- **2.** Insert a new battery case making sure that the case is correctly aligned and the pins inside the GuardPLC 1200 are not bent. Press on the left edge of the case until the battery snaps into place.

Used batteries must be packaged and transported to a proper disposal site in accordance with local regulations.

GuardPLC 2000 Power Supply

Replace the backup battery every four years. Replacement batteries are available from Rockwell Automation (1755-BAT). Follow the steps on page C-3 to replace the battery:



Make sure that the GuardPLC 2000 is powered on. Replacing the backup battery while the controller is off causes a reset. All data including the clock settings will be lost. **1.** Remove the lid by removing the two screws.



- **2.** Use a flat-head screwdriver to remove the battery from its compartment.
- **3.** Insert a new battery, following the polarity shown on the compartment.

Make sure that the contact pins inside the battery compartment are not damaged.

Used batteries must be packaged and transported to a proper disposal site in accordance with local regulations.

Numerics

1755-HSC LEDs 11-11 **1755-IF8 LEDs** 11-10 **1755-OF8 LEDs** 11-11

A

access level 10-1 acknowledge timeout 12-9 analog data B-5, B-6 ASCII connecting 14-1 data type formats 14-9 master request 14-6 overview 1-9 protocol 14-6 serial port 14-4 signals 14-5 slave response 14-7

В

Bus Cycle Time 12-5

C

check consistency 6-1, 7-11 code 17-11 code generator version 13-4communication time slice 13-2 communications ASCII 14-1 changing IP address 4-22 changing SRS 4-22 control panel 7-1 determining IP address 4-21 determining SRS 4-21 logging in 4-20 Modbus 15-1 Peer-to-Peer 12-1 configuration counters 18-3 configuring controllers 8-5 programming terminals 4-19 serial port 14-4 connecting ASCII device 14-1 ASCII signals 14-5 controllers and programming terminals 4-1 GuardPLC 1200 4-1 GuardPLC 2000 4-2

Modbus device 15-2 Modbus signals 15-3 Profibus DP device 15-5 Profibus DP signals 15-7 connection control system tag 13-8 connection state system tag 13-8control panel 7-1 controllers changing IP address 4-22 changing SRS 4-22 configuring 8-5 connecting ASCII device 14-1 connecting Modbus device 15-2 connecting Profibus DP device 15-5 connecting programming terminals 4-1 control panel 7-1 determining IP address 4-21 determining SRS 4-21 GuardPLC 1200 LEDs 11-4 GuardPLC 1600 LEDs 11-5 GuardPLC 1800 LEDs 11-5 GuardPLC 2000 LEDs 11-7 logaing in 4-20modes 8-1 serial port 14-4 switches 8-7 system variables B-1 counter configuration 18-3 counter mode inputs 18-2 counter modes 18-1 counters data B-8 gray code 18-5 with direction and reset 18-4with manual direction 18-3 creating user access 10-2

D

data types 14-9 decoder mode 18-5 inputs 18-2 default password 10-1 default user name 10-1 diagnostics 1755-HSC LEDs 11-11 1755-IF8 LEDs 11-10 1755-0F8 LEDs 11-11 distributed I/0 11-5 filtering 11-3 GuardPLC 1200 LEDs 11-4 GuardPLC 1600 11-5 GuardPLC 1800 11-5 GuardPLC 2000 LEDs 11-7 viewing 11-1 digital data B-3 distributed I/O LEDs 11-5 downloading routines 6-2

Ε

editing forces 9-5 entering force values and force marks 9-5 Ethernet connecting controller and programming terminal 4-1 see GuardPLC Ethernet

F

Faults response 1-2 filtering diagnostic data 11-3 forcing force values and force marks 9-5 function blocks generating code 17-11 scaling 17-8 technical units 17-8

G

generating code 17-11 gray code 18-5 GuardPLC 1200 connecting 4-1 connecting ASCII device 14-1 LEDs 11-4 overview 1-3 **GuardPLC 1600** overview 1-4 GuardPLC 1800 overview 1-4 **GuardPLC 2000** 1755-HSC terminals 3-33 1755-IB24X016 terminals 3-8 1755-IF8 terminals 3-9 1755-0F8 terminals 3-9 connecting 4-2connecting ASCII device 14-3 LEDs 11-7

overview 1-6 GuardPLC Ethernet overview 1-8

H

HH Network Profiles 12-10–12-16 fast 12-11 medium 12-13 None 12-16 HH protocol parameters 12-3–12-6 HH-Network 13-4–13-6

I/O data B-3 **IP address** 4-22

L

line control 1753-IB16 16-2 1753-IB20X0B8 16-1 configuration 16-4 GuardPLC 1600 16-1 response to faults 16-3 link mode 12-4 link mode (extern) 12-6 logging in 4-20

Μ

managing user access 10-1 manuals, related P-2 Modbus configuring 15-2 connecting 15-2 overview 1-9 protocol 15-5 signals 15-3 modes controllers 8-1 routines 8-8 monitoring diagnostics 11-1 signals 9-1

0

OPC Server overview 1-10 overview 1-1

P

password default 10-1 **Peer-to-Peer Network Profiles** 12-17– 12 - 23fast & cleanroom 12-18 fast & noisy 12-19 medium & cleanroom 12-20 medium & noisy 12-21 slow & cleanroom 12-22 slow & noisy 12-23 power supply connections distributed I/O 3-15 GuardPLC 1600 3-15 GuardPLC 1800 3-15 primary controller 12-5 primary timout 12-6 production rate 12-9 **Profibus DP Slave** configuring 15-6 connecting 15-5 overview 1-10 protocol 15-8 signals 15-7 programming terminals configuring 4-19 connecting controller 4-1 SRS 4-19 protocol ASCII 14-6 High Level High Speed (HH) 12-1 Modbus 15-5 Peer-to-Peer 12-1 publications, related P-2 pulse test sources 1753-IB16 16-2

0

queue length 12-9

R

receive timeout definition 12-8 reconfiguring 13-23 setting 12-8 related publications P-2 resent timeout 12-8 reset pushbutton 2-13 response time definition 12-5, 12-7 reconfiguring 13-22 variables 12-7 response time (extern) 12-6 routines controlling 6-6 downloading 6-2 execution states 6-6 modes 8-8 starting 6-4 testing 6-5

S

Safe States inputs 1-2 outputs 1-3 safety concept 1-1 scaling 17-8 secondary controller 12-6 secondary interval 12-6 serial port 14-4 signals ASCII 14-5 counter data B-8 force values and force marks 9-5 I/O data B-3 Modbus 15-3 monitoring 9-1 Profibus DP 15-7 system variables B-1 SRS changing 4-22 starting routines 6-4 switches 8-7 system variables B-1

Т

technical units 17-8 terminals 1755-HSC 3-33 1755-IB24X016 3-8 1755-IF8 3-9 1755-OF8 3-9 testing routines 6-5 token alive timeout 12-5 token cycle time 12-5 token group configuring 13-6 creating 13-5 definition 12-11 ID 12-4, 13-6

U

user access 10-1 user name default 10-1

V

variables system B-1 user defined function blocks 17-5

W

watchdog time 12-9 reconfiguring 13-19 worst-case reaction time definition 12-10 variables 12-10

Rockwell Automation Support

Rockwell Automation provides technical information on the web to assist you in using our products. At http://support.rockwellautomation.com, you can find technical manuals, a knowledge base of FAQs, technical and application notes, sample code and links to software service packs, and a MySupport feature that you can customize to make the best use of these tools.

For an additional level of technical phone support for installation, configuration and troubleshooting, we offer TechConnect Support programs. For more information, contact your local distributor or Rockwell Automation representative, or visit http://support.rockwellautomation.com.

Installation Assistance

If you experience a problem with a hardware module within the first 24 hours of installation, please review the information that's contained in this manual. You can also contact a special Customer Support number for initial help in getting your module up and running:

United States	1.440.646.3223 Monday – Friday, 8am – 5pm EST
Outside United States	Please contact your local Rockwell Automation representative for any technical support issues.

New Product Satisfaction Return

Rockwell tests all of our products to ensure that they are fully operational when shipped from the manufacturing facility. However, if your product is not functioning and needs to be returned:

United States	Contact your distributor. You must provide a Customer Support case number (see phone number above to obtain one) to your distributor in order to complete the return process.
Outside United States	Please contact your local Rockwell Automation representative for return procedure.

www.rockwellautomation.com

Corporate Headquarters

Rockwell Automation, 777 East Wisconsin Avenue, Suite 1400, Milwaukee, WI, 53202-5302 USA, Tel: (1) 414.212.5200, Fax: (1) 414.212.5201

Headquarters for Allen-Bradley Products, Rockwell Software Products and Global Manufacturing Solutions

Americas: Rockwell Automation, 1201 South Second Street, Milwaukee, WI 53204-2496 USA, Tel: (1) 414.382.2000, Fax: (1) 414.382.4444 Europe: Rockwell Automation SA/NV, Vorstlaan/Boulevard du Souverain 36-BP 3A/B, 1170 Brussels, Belgium, Tel: (32) 2 663 0600, Fax: (32) 2 663 0640 Asia Pacific: Rockwell Automation, 27/F Citicorp Centre, 18 Whitfield Road, Causeway Bay, Hong Kong, Tel: (852) 2887 4788, Fax: (852) 2508 1846

Headquarters for Dodge and Reliance Electric Products

Americas: Rockwell Automation, 6040 Ponders Court, Greenville, SC 29615-4617 USA, Tel: (1) 864.297.4800, Fax: (1) 864.281.2433 Europe: Rockwell Automation, Brühlstraße 22, D-74834 Elztal-Dallau, Germany, Tel: (49) 6261 9410, Fax: (49) 6261 17741 Asia Pacific: Rockwell Automation, 55 Newton Road, #11-01/02 Revenue House, Singapore 307987, Tel: (65) 351 6723, Fax: (65) 355 1733